

## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

PCT

## NOTIFICATION OF ELECTION

(PCT Rule 61.2)

From the INTERNATIONAL BUREAU

To:

Assistant Commissioner for Patents  
United States Patent and Trademark  
Office  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C.20231  
ETATS-UNIS D'AMERIQUE

in its capacity as elected Office

Date of mailing (day/month/year)

22 May 2000 (22.05.00)

International application No.

PCT/DK99/00525

Applicant's or agent's file reference

22113 PC 1

International filing date (day/month/year)

05 October 1999 (05.10.99)

Priority date (day/month/year)

05 October 1998 (05.10.98)

Applicant

STEINAA, Lucilla et al

1. The designated Office is hereby notified of its election made:



in the demand filed with the International Preliminary Examining Authority on:

28 April 2000 (28.04.00)



in a notice effecting later election filed with the International Bureau on:

2. The election ☒ was

was not

made before the expiration of 19 months from the priority date or, where Rule 32 applies, within the time limit under Rule 32.2(b).

The International Bureau of WIPO  
34, chemin des Colombettes  
1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland

Facsimile No.: (41-22) 740.14.35

Authorized officer

F. Baechler

Telephone No.: (41-22) 338.83.38

## PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

## PCT

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

(PCT Article 18 and Rules 43 and 44)

Applicant's or agent's file reference <b>22113 PC 1</b>	<b>FOR FURTHER ACTION</b> see Notification of Transmittal of International Search Report (Form PCT/ISA/220) as well as, where applicable, item 5 below.	
International application No. <b>PCT/DK 99/ 00525</b>	International filing date ( <i>day month year</i> ) <b>05/10/1999</b>	(Earliest) Priority Date ( <i>day month year</i> ) <b>05/10/1998</b>
Applicant <b>M&amp;E BIOTECH A/S et al.</b>		

This International Search Report has been prepared by this International Searching Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 18. A copy is being transmitted to the International Bureau.

This International Search Report consists of a total of 3 sheets.



It is also accompanied by a copy of each prior art document cited in this report.

## 1. Basis of the report

- a. With regard to the **language**, the international search was carried out on the basis of the international application in the language in which it was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.



the international search was carried out on the basis of a translation of the international application furnished to this Authority (Rule 23.1(b)).

- b. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, the international search was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing :



contained in the international application in written form.



filed together with the international application in computer readable form.



furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.



furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.



the statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.



the statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished

2. ☒ **Certain claims were found unsearchable** (See Box I).

3. ☐ **Unity of invention is lacking** (see Box II).

4. With regard to the **title**,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.



the text has been established by this Authority to read as follows:

**METHODS FOR THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION**

5. With regard to the **abstract**,

the text is approved as submitted by the applicant.



the text has been established, according to Rule 38.2(b), by this Authority as it appears in Box III. The applicant may, within one month from the date of mailing of this international search report, submit comments to this Authority.

6. The figure of the **drawings** to be published with the abstract is Figure No



as suggested by the applicant.



because the applicant failed to suggest a figure.



because this figure better characterizes the invention.

2



None of the figures

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No  
PCT/DK 99/00525

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
  
Although claims 1-47 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the epitopes.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No

/DK 99/00525

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K38/17 A61K38/18 C07K14/50 C07K14/705 C07K14/71  
C12N15/63 C12N5/16 C12N15/12

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 A61K C07K C12N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category °	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DALUM I ET AL: "Induction of cross-reactive antibodies against a self protein by immunization with a modified self protein containing a foreign T helper epitope." MOLECULAR IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 NOV-DEC) 34 (16-17) 1113-20. , XP000910038 the whole document ---	1-53
X	WO 95 05849 A (MOURITSEN & ELSNER A S ;MOURITSEN SOEREN (DK); ELSNER HENRIK (DK)) 2 March 1995 (1995-03-02) the whole document -----	1-53



Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.



Patent family members are listed in annex.

° Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

30 June 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

13. 07. 00

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Mennessier, T



# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PT/DK 99/00525

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
W0 9505849 A	02-03-1995	AT 162723 T	15-02-1998
		AU 707083 B	01-07-1999
		AU 7009198 A	30-07-1998
		AU 7608094 A	21-03-1995
		CA 2170236 A	02-03-1995
		DE 69408342 D	05-03-1998
		DE 69408342 T	14-05-1998
		DK 752886 T	04-05-1998
		EP 0752886 A	15-01-1997
		ES 2112559 T	01-04-1998
		GR 3026419 T	30-06-1998
		JP 9505031 T	20-05-1997
<hr/>			

REC'D 05 JAN 2001

WIPO

PCT

## INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT



(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

Applicant's or agent's file reference 22113 PC 1	<b>FOR FURTHER ACTION</b>	See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/IPEA/416)
International application No. PCT/DK99/00525	International filing date (day/month/year) 05/10/1999	Priority date (day/month/year) 05/10/1998
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC A61K39/00		
Applicant M&E BIOTECH A/S et al.		

1. This international preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.
2. This REPORT consists of a total of 9 sheets, including this cover sheet.  
  
☒ This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e. sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings which have been amended and are the basis for this report and/or sheets containing rectifications made before this Authority (see Rule 70.16 and Section 607 of the Administrative Instructions under the PCT).  
  
These annexes consist of a total of 8 sheets.

3. This report contains indications relating to the following items:

- I ☒ Basis of the report
- II ☐ Priority
- III ☒ Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability
- IV ☐ Lack of unity of invention
- V ☒ Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement
- VI ☐ Certain documents cited
- VII ☐ Certain defects in the international application
- VIII ☒ Certain observations on the international application

Date of submission of the demand  28/04/2000	Date of completion of this report  02.01.2001
Name and mailing address of the international preliminary examining authority:   European Patent Office D-80298 Munich Tel. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465	Authorized officer  Mennessier, T  Telephone No. +49 89 2399 8687  

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

**I. Basis of the report**

1. This report has been drawn on the basis of *(substitute sheets which have been furnished to the receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "originally filed" and are not annexed to the report since they do not contain amendments (Rules 70.16 and 70.17).)*:

**Description, pages:**

1-155 as originally filed

**Claims, No.:**

1-83 as received on 11/11/2000 with letter of 08/11/2000

**Drawings, sheets:**

1/6-6/6 as originally filed

**Sequence listing part of the description, pages:**

1-41, as originally filed

2. With regard to the **language**, all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the language in which the international application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

These elements were available or furnished to this Authority in the following language: , which is:

- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of the international search (under Rule 23.1(b)).
- ☐ the language of publication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)).
- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule 55.2 and/or 55.3).

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, the international preliminary examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

- ☒ contained in the international application in written form.
- ☐ filed together with the international application in computer readable form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.
- ☐ The statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.
- ☐ The statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

4. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of:

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

- ☐ the description,      pages:
- ☐ the claims,      Nos.:
- ☐ the drawings,      sheets:

5. ☐ This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed (Rule 70.2(c)):

*(Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.)*

6. Additional observations, if necessary:  
**see separate sheet**

**III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability**

1. The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

☐ the entire international application.

☒ claims Nos. 1-47.

because:

☒ the said international application, or the said claims Nos. 1-47 (with respect to industrial applicability) relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (*specify*):  
**see separate sheet**

☐ the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

☐ the claims, or said claims Nos. are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.

☐ no international search report has been established for the said claims Nos. .

2. A meaningful international preliminary examination report cannot be carried out due to the failure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing to comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions:

☐ the written form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.

☐ the computer readable form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.

**V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**

# INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

## 1. Statement

Novelty (N)	Yes:	Claims	1-83
	No:	Claims	
Inventive step (IS)	Yes:	Claims	1-83
	No:	Claims	
Industrial applicability (IA)	Yes:	Claims	48-83
	No:	Claims	

## 2. Citations and explanations

### VIII. Certain observations on the international application

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:  
**see separate sheet**

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

1. Comments with respect to item III

**Claims 1-47** relate to methods of treatment of the animal/human body by therapy, i.e., to subject-matter considered by this Authority to be covered by the provisions of Rule 67.1(iv) PCT. Consequently, no opinion will be formulated with respect to the industrial applicability of the subject-matter of these claims (Article 34(4)(a)(i) PCT).

2. Comments with respect to item V

a) Cited documents

Reference is made to the following documents in the present report:

# D1: WO 95/05849

# D2: *Molecular Immunology*, 34(16-17), 1997 Nov-Dec, 1113-20

(i) Document D1

One of the inventors of D1 also contributed to the present application under examination.

Document D1 describes a method for utilizing an immune apparatus to remove and/or down-regulate self-proteins (see page 1, lines 7-9). The method relies on the finding that injection of recombinant proteins, which have been appropriately modulated by the insertion of one or more foreign T cell epitopes, induces a profound autoantibody response against said proteins.

(ii) Document D2

Two of the inventors of the present application under examination also contributed to document D2.

Document D2 reports on the induction in mice of cross-reactive

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

antibodies against a self protein by immunization with a modified self-protein containing a foreign T helper epitope inserted into its sequence.

b) Novelty (Article 33(2) PCT)

(i) Claims 1-47

The invention as defined claims 1-47 provides for a method for induction CTLs reactive with cells harbouring self-proteins or other weak antigens, i.e., to a method for the induction of cell-mediated immunity.

In contrast, documents D1 and D2, two documents which are considered to represent the most relevant state of the art, are concerned the induction not of CTL responses but of antibodies, only a temporary, humoral autoimmunity being induced.

Therefore, the subject-matter of claims 1-47 as a whole may be considered to be new.

(ii) Claims 48-63

Admitting that in the constructs of neither of documents D1 and D2 the foreign T helper epitope has been introduced within a subsequence as defined in step (a) of claim 48, the subject-matter of the said claim may be acknowledged as new. The same conclusion applies *de facto* to (a) claims 49 and 50 as being dependent on claim 48, and (b) claims 51-63.

(iii) Claims 64-83

No analogues within the meaning of the present application of human PSM, human Her2 and human/murine FGF8b appear to have been disclosed in any of the prior art documents cited in the international search report. Therefore, the subject-matter of claims 64-72 as a whole

can be regarded as new, the same conclusion applying *de facto* to the subject-matter of each of claims 73-83, as being defined by way of a back-reference to claims 64-71.

c) Inventive Step (Article 33(3) PCT)

(i) Claims 1-47

- (1) The invention as defined in claim 1 relies on the findings that breaking of autotolerance towards cells harbouring undesired but non-immunogenic self-proteins and other weak antigens can be accomplished by forcing APCs to utilise the Class I pathway to present CTL epitopes in the protein in question if the APC at the same time presents foreign T-helper cell epitopes. In other terms, it has been discovered that it is possible to induce CTL responses against "self" by a mechanism which resembles the mechanism for inducing antibodies.
- (2) There appears to be absolutely no teaching in neither D1 nor D2 that the technology reported therein would be capable of inducing CTL responses against autologous cells, both references dealing strictly with the induction of antibodies against autologous proteins. There is also no teaching in D1 or D2 which provides any incentive for the person skilled in the art to utilise the technology reported therein for attacking, e.g., purely intracellular antigen via CTLs or to utilise a combination of antibody and CTL induction to down-regulate proteins which are membrane bound.
- (3) The technical problem solved by the invention may be regarded as the provision of means for inducing immune responses in host organisms against self-proteins or other weak antigens.
- (4) In view of the above remarks, it can be considered that claim 48 proposes a non-obvious solution to the said technical problem. Therefore, it can be acknowledged that the subject-matter of claim



**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

1 involves an inventive step, the same conclusion also applying to claims 2-47 as being dependent therein.

(ii) Claims 48-63

- (1) Neither D1 nor D2 suggest that the strategy of introducing foreign T-helper epitopes in a self-protein can be used for induction of CTL responses against cells expressing the unmodified self-protein. It has also to be noted that the strategy set forth in claim 48 includes the step of deliberately avoiding destruction/removal of CTL epitopes when inserting the foreign T-helper epitope and that the claim also involves a verification step where the CTL inducing capabilities of the resulting constructs are tested.
- (2) The technical problem solved by the invention may be regarded as the provision of means for selection of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic in an animal, said analogue being capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
- (3) In view of the above remarks, it can be considered that claim 48 proposes a non-obvious solution to the said technical problem. Therefore, it can be acknowledged that the subject-matter of claim 48 involves an inventive step, the same conclusion also applying to (a) claims 49-50, as being dependent therein, (b) claim 51 which relates to a method for the preparation of cell producing an analogue which has been selected according to the method of any one of claims 48-50 and (c) claims 52-63 as being dependent on claim 51.

(iii) Claims 64-83

As it can be considered that none of the cited prior art documents would have suggested, when taken alone or in combination, that

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

human PSM analogues, FGF8b analogues and Her2 analogues could be advantageously prepared, the subject-matter of claims 64-83 can be regarded as inventive.

d) Industrial applicability (Article 33(4) PCT)

- (i) The subject-matter of claims 48-83 is considered to be susceptible of industrial applicability.
- (ii) For the assessment of the present claims 1-47 on the question whether they are industrially applicable, no unified criteria exist in the PCT Contracting States. The patentability can also be dependent upon the formulation of the claims. The EPO, for example, does not recognize as industrially applicable the subject-matter of claims to the use of a compound in medical treatment, but may allow, however, claims to a known compound for first use in medical treatment and the use of such a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for a new medical treatment.

3. Comments with respect to item VIII

It would appear that it was omitted to specify in claim 54 that it is directed to the method according to any one of the preceding claims 51-53.

CLAIMS

1. A method for inducing an immune response against a polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, the method comprising effecting simultaneous presentation by antigen presenting cells (APCs) of the animal's immune system of an immunogenically effective amount of
  - 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the polypeptide antigen and/or at least one B-cell epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
  - 2) at least one first T helper cell epitope (T<sub>H</sub> epitope) which is foreign to the animal.
2. A method for down-regulating a cell-associated polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, by inducing a specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response against cells carrying the cell-associated polypeptide antigen on their surface or harbouring the cell-associated polypeptide antigen in their intracellular compartment, the method comprising effecting, in the animal, simultaneous presentation by a suitable antigen presenting cell (APC) of
  - 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
  - 2) at least one first T-helper lymphocyte (T<sub>H</sub>) epitope which is foreign to the animal.
3. The method according to claim 1 or 2, wherein said at least one CTL epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class I molecule on the surface of the APC and/or wherein said at

least one first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class II molecule on the surface of the APC.

4. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the APC is a dendritic cell or a macrophage.

5. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the polypeptide antigen is selected from a tumour-associated polypeptide antigen, a self-protein, a viral polypeptide antigen, and a polypeptide antigen derived from an intracellular parasite or bacterium.

6. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein presentation by the APC of the CTL epitope and the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is effected by presenting the animal's immune system with at least one first analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said first analogue comprising a variation of the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide antigen, said variation containing at least the CTL epitope and the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope.

7. The method according to claim 6, wherein the at least first analogue contains a substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

8. The method according to claim 7, wherein the substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes in the amino acid sequence of the analogue are recognized by at least 90% of the MHC-I haplotypes recognizing all known and predicted CTL epitopes in the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

9. The method according to any one of claims 6-8, wherein substantially all known CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the analogue and/or wherein

substantially all predicted T<sub>H</sub> epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the at least first analogue.

10. The method according to any one of claims 6-9, wherein the at least one first analogue further comprises a part consisting of a modification of the structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of the animal with the first analogue induces production of antibodies in the animal against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

11. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, which comprises effecting presentation to the animal's immune system of an immunogenically effective amount of at least one second analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said second analogue containing a modification of the structure of the polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of the animal with the second analogue induces production of antibodies against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

12. The method according to claim 11, wherein the modification comprises that at least one second foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is included in the second analogue.

13. The method according to any one of claims 6-12, wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) comprise(s) a substantial fraction of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen's E-cell epitopes.

14. The method according to any one of claims 6-13, wherein the variation and/or modification involves amino acid substitution and/or deletion and/or insertion and/or addition.

15. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein the variation and/or modification comprises that

- at least one first moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said first moiety effecting targeting of the analogue to an antigen presenting cell (APC), and/or
- at least one second moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said second moiety stimulating the immune system, and/or
- at least one third moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said third moiety optimizing presentation of the analogue to the immune system.

16. The method according to any one of claims 6-15, wherein the variation and/or modification includes duplication of at least one B-cell epitope or of at least one CTL epitope of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen

17. The method according to any one of claims 6-16, wherein the variation and/or modification includes introduction of a hapten.

18. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope(s) is/are immunodominant.

19. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope(s) is/are promiscuous.

20. The method according to any one of claims 13-19, wherein the first and/or second foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope(s) is/are selected from a natural T<sub>H</sub> epitope and an artificial MHC-II binding peptide sequence.

11. The method according to claim 1, wherein the natural T<sub>H</sub> epitope is selected from a Tetanus toxin epitope such as 11 or 21, a diphtheria toxin epitope, an influenza virus hemagglutinin epitope, and a *E. histolyticum* CS epitope.

21. The method according to any one of claims 12-21, wherein the first and/or second T<sub>H</sub> epitopes and/or first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of

- side groups attached covalently or non-covalently to suitable chemical groups in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen or a subsequence thereof, and/or
- fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

23. The method according to claim 22, wherein the first moiety is a substantially specific binding partner for an APC specific surface antigen such as a carbohydrate for which there is a receptor on the APC, e.g. mannan or mannose.

24. The method according to any one of claims 15-23, wherein the second moiety is a cytokine selected from interferon ( $\gamma$ ), Flt3L, interleukin 1 (IL-1), interleukin 2 (IL-2), interleukin 4 (IL-4), interleukin 6 (IL-6), interleukin 12 (IL-12), interleukin 13 (IL-13), interleukin 15 (IL-15), and granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), or an effective part thereof; a heat-shock protein selected from HSP70, HSP90, HSC70, GRP94, and calreticulin (CRT), or an effective part thereof; or a hormone.

25. The method according to any one of claims 16-24, wherein the third moiety is a lipid such as a palmitoyl group, a myristoyl group, a farnesyl group, a geranyl-geranyl group, a GPI-anchor, and an N-acyl diglyceride group.

26. The method according to claim any one of claims 7-25, wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) has/have substantially the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

27. The method according to any one of claims 6-26, wherein presentation by the APC is effected by administering, to the animal, an immunogenically effective amount of the at least one first analogue.

28. The method according to claim 27, wherein is also administered an immunologically effective amount of the at least one second analogue.

29. The method according to claim 27 or 28, wherein said at least one first and/or second analogue(s) is/are formulated together with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier and/or vehicle and, optionally an adjuvant.

30. The method according to claim 29, wherein said adjuvant facilitates uptake by APCs, such as dendritic cells, of the at least first and/or second analogues.

31. The method according to claim 30, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of an immune targeting adjuvant; an immune modulating adjuvant such as a toxin, a cytokine, and a mycobacterial derivative; an oil formulation; a polymer; a micelle forming adjuvant; a saponin; an immunostimulating complex matrix (ISCOM matrix); a particle; TTA; aluminium adjuvants; DNA adjuvants; (-)inulin; and an encapsulating adjuvant.



32. The method according to claim 31, wherein the cytokine is as defined as in claim 14, or an effective part thereof, wherein the toxin is selected from the group consisting of listeriolysin (LLC), lipid A (ML, LPS, S/PallPS), and heat-labile enterotoxin, wherein the mycobacterial derivative is selected from the group consisting of muramyl dipeptide, complete Freund's adjuvant, RIBI, and a diester of trehalose such as TDM and TDE, wherein the immune targeting adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of CD40 ligand, CD40 antibodies or specifically binding fragments thereof, mannose, a Fab fragment, and CTLA-4, wherein the oil formulation comprises squalene or incomplete Freund's adjuvant, wherein the polymer is selected from the group consisting of a carbohydrate such as dextran, PEG, starch, mannan, and mannose; a plastic polymer such as; and latex such as latex beads, wherein the saponin is *Quillaja saponaria* saponin, Quil A, and QS21, and wherein the particle comprises latex or dextran.

33. The method according to any one of claims 27-32, which includes administration via a route selected from the oral route and the parenteral route such as the intradermal, the subdermal, the intracutaneous, the subcutaneous; the peritoneal, the buccal, the sublingual, the epidural, the spinal, the anal, and the intracranial routes.

34. The method according to any of claim 27-33, which includes at least one administration a year, such as at least 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 12 administrations a year.

35. The method according to any one of claims 1-8, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying a nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the at least one CTL epitope and the at least one T<sub>H</sub> epitope.

36. The method according to any one of claims 1-14, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least first analogue.

37. The method according to any one of claims 15-24, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

38. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 or 36, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least second analogue.

39. The method according to claim 38, wherein the non-pathogenic microorganism or virus is administered once to the animal.

40. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and/or the at least one B-cell epitope, and the at least one first foreign T epitope.

41. The method according to any one of claims 4-14, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC,

at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first analogue.

41. The method according to any one of claims 15-20, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

43. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 and 41, which further comprises in vivo introduction, into the APC, of at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the second analogue.

44. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo co-introducing, into the APC, at least two nucleic acid fragments, wherein one encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and wherein another encodes and expresses the at least one first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope, and wherein the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is as defined in any one of claims 1, 2 and 21-24.

45. The method according to any one of claims 40-44, wherein the nucleic acid fragment(s) introduced is/are selected from naked DNA, DNA formulated with charged or uncharged lipids, DNA formulated in liposomes, DNA included in a viral vector, DNA formulated with a transfection-facilitating protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting carbohydrate, DNA formulated with calcium precipitating agents, DNA coupled to an inert carrier molecule, and DNA formulated with an adjuvant.

45. The method according to claim 43, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of the adjuvants defined in any one of claims 31-32.

47. The method according to any one of claims 43-46, wherein the mode of administration is as defined in claim 33 or 34.

48. A method for selection of an immunogenic analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in an animal, said immunogenic analogue being capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising

- a) identifying at least one subsequence of the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen which does not contain known or predicted CTL epitopes,
- b) preparing at least one putatively immunogenic analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen by introducing, in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, at least one T<sub>H</sub> epitope foreign to the animal in a position within the at least one subsequence identified in step a), and
- c) selecting the/those analogues prepared in step b) which are verifiably capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal.

49. The method according to claim 48, wherein

- 1° the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain cysteine residues, or, alternatively, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the pattern of cysteine residues, and or

- 2) the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain known or predicted glycosylation sites, or, alternatively, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the glycosylation pattern, and/or
- 3) the subsequence identified in step a) contributes significantly to a patophysiological effect exerted by the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein the introduction in step b) of the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope reduces or abolishes said patophysiological effect, and/or
- 4) the subsequence identified in step a) is homologous to an amino acid sequence of a different protein antigen of the animal, and wherein the introduction of the T<sub>H</sub> epitope in step b) substantially removes the homology, and/or
- 5) introduction in step b) of the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope results in preservation of a substantial fraction of B-cell epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

50. The method according to claim 49, variant 5, wherein the analogue has the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

51. A method for the preparation of cell producing an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising introducing, into a vector, a nucleic acid sequence encoding an analogue which has been selected according to the method of any one of claims 46-51 and transforming a suitable host cell with the vector.

52. A method for the preparation of an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising culturing the cell obtained according to the method of claim

52. under conditions facilitating expression of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and recovering the analogue from the culture supernatant or from the cells.

53. The method according to claim 52 which further comprises the step of purifying the recovered analogue and, optionally, subjecting the purified product to artificial post-translational modifications such as refolding, treatment with enzymes, chemical modification, and conjugation.

54. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the weak cell-associated antigen is selected from the group consisting of 5 alpha reductase, V-fetoprotein, AM-1, APC, APRIL, BAGE, E-catenin, Bcl2, bcr-abl (b3a2), CA-125, CASP-8 / FLICE, Cathepsins, CD19, CD20, CD21, CD23, CD22, CD33, CD35, CD44, CD45, CD46, CD5, CD52, CD55 (791Tgp72), CD59, CDC27, CDK4, CEA, c-myc, Cox-2, DCC, Dcr3, E6 / E7, EGFR, ENBP, Ena73, farsyl transferase, FGF8a or FGF8b, FLK-1/KDR, Folic Acid Receptor, G250, GAGE-Family, gastrin 17, Gastrin-releasing hormone (Bombesin), GD2 / GD3 / GM2, GnRH, GnTV, GP1, gp100 / Pmel 17, gp-100-in4, gp15, gp75 / TRP-1, hCG, Heparanase, Her2 / neu, HMTV, Hsp70, hTERT (telomerase), IGFBP1, IL-13R, INOS, Ki 67, KIAA0205, K-ras, H-ras, N-ras, KSA (COL7-1A), LDLR-FUT, MAGE Family (MAGE-1, MAGE-2, MAGE-3, etc), Mammaglobin, MRP17, Melan-A / MART-1, mesothelin, MIC A/B, MT-MMP's, Mox1, Mucin such as MUC-1, MUC-2, MUC-3, and MUC-4 being aberrantly glycosylated, MUM-1, NY-ESO-1, Osteonectin, p15, P170 / MDR1, p53, p97 / melanotransferrin, PAI-1, PLGF, Plasminogen uPA, PRAME, Probasin, Progenipietin, PSA, PSN, RAGE-1, Sh, SCAS1, SART-1, SSM gene family, STAT3, Stn (mucin assoc. ), TAG-72, TGF- $\beta$ , TGF- $\beta$ , Thymosin  $\beta$  16, TNF- $\alpha$ , TPA, TPI, TTF-1, Tyrosinase, VEGF, VEGF, vimentin, and vimentin  $\beta$ -transferase.

54. The method according to claim 53, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is human PSM.

55. The method according to claim 54, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the PSM amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 2 positions 16-52 and/or 67-106 and/or 210-230 and/or 269-289 and/or 296-324 and/or 442-465 and/or 468-514 and/or 599-639 and/or 643-662 and/or 672-692.

56. The method according to claim 54 or 55 used in the treatment or amelioration of prostate cancer.

57. The method according to claim 53, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is fibroblast growth factor 8b (FGF8b).

58. The method according to claim 57, where the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 6 positions 1-54 and/or 178-215 and/or 55-58 and/or 63-68 and/or 72-76 and/or 85-91 and/or 95-102 and/or 106-111 and/or 115-120 and/or 128-134 and/or 136-144 and/or 149-154 and/or 158-162 and/or 173-177, and wherein the introduction preferably does not substantially involve amino acids 26-48 and amino acids 196-215.

59. The method according to claim 57 or 58 used in the treatment or amelioration of cancer such as prostate cancer and breast cancer.

60. The method according to claim 53, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is Her2.

61. The method according to claim 60, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the Her2 amino acid

sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 1 positions 8-20 and/or 22-70 and/or 113-117 and/or 148-151 and/or 211-214 and/or 228-234 and/or 328-334 and/or 348-353 and/or 448-479 and/or 573-596 and/or 630-682 and/or 688-697 and/or 691-675 and/or 698-706 and/or 710-730.

32-66 and/or 146-163 and/or 221-235 and/or 257-271 and/or 347-401.

62. The method according to claim 60 or 61 used in the treatment or amelioration of breast cancer.

63. An analogue of human PSM which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of PSM and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

64. The analogue according to claim 63, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the PSM amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the PSM amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the PSM amino acid sequence.

65. The analogue according to claim 64, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 55.

66. An analogue of human Her2 which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of Her2 and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

67. The analogue according to claim 66, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the Her2



amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence.

68. The analogue according to claim 67, wherein the foreign  $T_H$  epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 61.

69. An analogue of human/murine FGF8b which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of FGF8b and including at least one foreign  $T_H$  epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

70. The analogue according to claim 69, wherein the at least one foreign  $T_H$  epitope is present as an insertion in the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence.

71. The analogue according to claim 70, wherein the foreign  $T_H$  epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 56.

72. An immunogenic composition which comprises, as an effective immunogenic agent the analogue according to any one of claims 63-71 in admixture with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier or vehicle, and optionally an adjuvant.

73. A nucleic acid fragment which encodes an analogue according to any one of claims 63-71.

74. A vector carrying the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73.

72. The vector according to claim 71 which is capable of autonomous replication.

73. The vector according to claim 74 or 75 which is selected from the group consisting of a plasmid, a phage, a cosmid, a mini-chromosome, and a virus.

74. The vector according to any one of claims 74-74, comprising, in the 5'63' direction and in operable linkage, a promoter for driving expression of the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73, optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a leader peptide enabling secretion of or integration into the membrane of the polypeptide fragment, the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73, and optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a terminator.

75. The vector according to any one of claims 74-77 which, when introduced into a host cell, is integrated in the host cell genome or is not capable of being integrated in the host cell genome.

76. A transformed cell carrying the vector of any one of claims 74-76.

77. A composition for inducing production of antibodies against PSM, Her2 or FGF6b, the composition comprising  
1) a nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73 or a vector according to any one of claims 74-76, and  
2) a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable diluent and/or vehicle and/or adjuvant.

78. A stable cell line which carries the vector according to any one of claims 74-77 and which expresses the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73, and which optionally secretes

or carries the analogue according to any one of claims 63-71 on its surface.

62. A method for the preparation of the cell according to claim 72, the method comprising transforming a host cell with the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 73 or with the vector according to any one of claims 74-78.

# PATENT COOPERATION TREATY

## PCT

### INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY EXAMINATION REPORT

(PCT Article 36 and Rule 70)

Applicant's or agent's file reference <b>22113 PC 1</b>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div> <b>FOR FURTHER ACTION</b> </div> <div>           See Notification of Transmittal of International Preliminary Examination Report (Form PCT/PEA/416)         </div> </div>	
International application No. <b>PCT/DK99/00525</b>	International filing date (day/month/year) <b>05/10/1999</b>	Priority date (day/month/year) <b>05/10/1998</b>
International Patent Classification (IPC) or national classification and IPC <b>A61K39/00</b>		
Applicant <b>M&amp;E BIOTECH A/S et al.</b>		
<p>1. This International preliminary examination report has been prepared by this International Preliminary Examining Authority and is transmitted to the applicant according to Article 36.</p> <p>2. This REPORT consists of a total of 9 sheets, including this cover sheet.</p> <p><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> This report is also accompanied by ANNEXES, i.e. sheets of the description, claims and/or drawings which have been amended and are the basis for this report and/or sheets containing rectifications made before this Authority (see Rule 70.16 and Section 607 of the Administrative Instructions under the PCT).</p> <p>These annexes consist of a total of 8 sheets.</p>		
<p>3. This report contains indications relating to the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>I <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Basis of the report</li> <li>II <input type="checkbox"/> Priority</li> <li>III <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability</li> <li>IV <input type="checkbox"/> Lack of unity of invention</li> <li>V <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement</li> <li>VI <input type="checkbox"/> Certain documents cited</li> <li>VII <input type="checkbox"/> Certain defects in the international application</li> <li>VIII <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Certain observations on the international application</li> </ul>		
Date of submission of the demand  <b>28/04/2000</b>	Date of completion of this report  <b>02.01.2001</b>	
Name and mailing address of the international preliminary examining authority:  <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div>             European Patent Office              D-80298 Munich              Tel. +49 89 2399 - 0 Tx: 523656 epmu d              Fax: +49 89 2399 - 4465           </div> </div>	Authorized officer  <b>Mennessier, T</b>  Telephone No. +49 89 2399 8687	



**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

**I. Basis of the report**

1. This report has been drawn on the basis of *(substitute sheets which have been furnished to the receiving Office in response to an invitation under Article 14 are referred to in this report as "originally filed" and are not annexed to the report since they do not contain amendments (Rules 70.16 and 70.17).)*

**Description, pages:**

1-155 as originally filed

**Claims, No.:**

1-83 as received on 11/11/2000 with letter of 08/11/2000

**Drawings, sheets:**

1/6-6/6 as originally filed

**Sequence listing part of the description, pages:**

1-41, as originally filed

2. With regard to the **language**, all the elements marked above were available or furnished to this Authority in the language in which the international application was filed, unless otherwise indicated under this item.

These elements were available or furnished to this Authority in the following language: , which is:

- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of the international search (under Rule 23.1(b)).
- ☐ the language of publication of the international application (under Rule 48.3(b)).
- ☐ the language of a translation furnished for the purposes of international preliminary examination (under Rule 55.2 and/or 55.3).

3. With regard to any **nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence** disclosed in the international application, the international preliminary examination was carried out on the basis of the sequence listing:

- ☒ contained in the international application in written form.
- ☐ filed together with the international application in computer readable form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in written form.
- ☐ furnished subsequently to this Authority in computer readable form.
- ☐ The statement that the subsequently furnished written sequence listing does not go beyond the disclosure in the international application as filed has been furnished.
- ☐ The statement that the information recorded in computer readable form is identical to the written sequence listing has been furnished.

4. The amendments have resulted in the cancellation of:

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

- ☐ the description,      pages:
- ☐ the claims,          Nos.:
- ☐ the drawings,        sheets:

5. ☐ This report has been established as if (some of) the amendments had not been made, since they have been considered to go beyond the disclosure as filed (Rule 70.2(c)):

*(Any replacement sheet containing such amendments must be referred to under item 1 and annexed to this report.)*

6. Additional observations, if necessary:  
**see separate sheet**

**III. Non-establishment of opinion with regard to novelty, inventive step and industrial applicability**

1. The questions whether the claimed invention appears to be novel, to involve an inventive step (to be non-obvious), or to be industrially applicable have not been examined in respect of:

- ☐ the entire international application.
- ☒ claims Nos. 1-47.

because:

- ☒ the said international application, or the said claims Nos. 1-47 (with respect to industrial applicability) relate to the following subject matter which does not require an international preliminary examination (*specify*):  
**see separate sheet**

- ☐ the description, claims or drawings (*indicate particular elements below*) or said claims Nos. are so unclear that no meaningful opinion could be formed (*specify*):

- ☐ the claims, or said claims Nos. are so inadequately supported by the description that no meaningful opinion could be formed.

- ☐ no international search report has been established for the said claims Nos. .

2. A meaningful international preliminary examination report cannot be carried out due to the failure of the nucleotide and/or amino acid sequence listing to comply with the standard provided for in Annex C of the Administrative Instructions:

- ☐ the written form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.
- ☐ the computer readable form has not been furnished or does not comply with the standard.

**V. Reasoned statement under Article 35(2) with regard to novelty, inventive step or industrial applicability; citations and explanations supporting such statement**

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT**

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

**1. Statement**

Novelty (N)	Yes:	Claims	1-83
	No:	Claims	
Inventive step (IS)	Yes:	Claims	1-83
	No:	Claims	
Industrial applicability (IA)	Yes:	Claims	48-83
	No:	Claims	

**2. Citations and explanations  
see separate sheet**

**VIII. Certain observations on the international application**

The following observations on the clarity of the claims, description, and drawings or on the question whether the claims are fully supported by the description, are made:  
**see separate sheet**

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

1. Comments with respect to item III

**Claims 1-47** relate to methods of treatment of the animal/human body by therapy, i.e., to subject-matter considered by this Authority to be covered by the provisions of Rule 67.1(iv) PCT. Consequently, no opinion will be formulated with respect to the industrial applicability of the subject-matter of these claims (Article 34(4)(a)(i) PCT).

2. Comments with respect to item V

a) Cited documents

Reference is made to the following documents in the present report:

- # D1: WO 95/05849
- # D2: *Molecular Immunology*, 34(16-17), 1997 Nov-Dec, 1113-20

(i) Document D1

One of the inventors of D1 also contributed to the present application under examination.

Document D1 describes a method for utilizing an immune apparatus to remove and/or down-regulate self-proteins (see page 1, lines 7-9). The method relies on the finding that injection of recombinant proteins, which have been appropriately modulated by the insertion of one or more foreign T cell epitopes, induces a profound autoantibody response against said proteins.

(ii) Document D2

Two of the inventors of the present application under examination also contributed to document D2.

Document D2 reports on the induction in mice of cross-reactive



**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

antibodies against a self protein by immunization with a modified self-protein containing a foreign T helper epitope inserted into its sequence.

b) Novelty (Article 33(2) PCT)

(i) Claims 1-47

The invention as defined claims 1-47 provides for a method for induction CTLs reactive with cells harbouring self-proteins or other weak antigens, i.e., to a method for the induction of cell-mediated immunity.

In contrast, documents D1 and D2, two documents which are considered to represent the most relevant state of the art, are concerned the induction not of CTL responses but of antibodies, only a temporary, humoral autoimmunity being induced.

Therefore, the subject-matter of claims 1-47 as a whole may be considered to be new.

(ii) Claims 48-63

Admitting that in the constructs of neither of documents D1 and D2 the foreign T helper epitope has been introduced within a subsequence as defined in step (a) of claim 48, the subject-matter of the said claim may be acknowledged as new. The same conclusion applies *de facto* to (a) claims 49 and 50 as being dependent on claim 48, and (b) claims 51-63.

(iii) Claims 64-83

No analogues within the meaning of the present application of human PSM, human Her2 and human/murine FGF8b appear to have been disclosed in any of the prior art documents cited in the international search report. Therefore, the subject-matter of claims 64-72 as a whole

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

can be regarded as new, the same conclusion applying *de facto* to the subject-matter of each of claims 73-83, as being defined by way of a back-reference to claims 64-71.

c) Inventive Step (Article 33(3) PCT)

(i) Claims 1-47

- (1) The invention as defined in claim 1 relies on the findings that breaking of autotolerance towards cells harbouring undesired but non-immunogenic self-proteins and other weak antigens can be accomplished by forcing APCs to utilise the Class I pathway to present CTL epitopes in the protein in question if the APC at the same time presents foreign T-helper cell epitopes. In other terms, it has been discovered that it is possible to induce CTL responses against "self" by a mechanism which resembles the mechanism for inducing antibodies.
- (2) There appears to be absolutely no teaching in neither D1 nor D2 that the technology reported therein would be capable of inducing CTL responses against autologous cells, both references dealing strictly with the induction of antibodies against autologous proteins. There is also no teaching in D1 or D2 which provides any incentive for the person skilled in the art to utilise the technology reported therein for attacking, e.g., purely intracellular antigen via CTLs or to utilise a combination of antibody and CTL induction to down-regulate proteins which are membrane bound.
- (3) The technical problem solved by the invention may be regarded as the provision of means for inducing immune responses in host organisms against self-proteins or other weak antigens.
- (4) In view of the above remarks, it can be considered that claim 48 proposes a non-obvious solution to the said technical problem. Therefore, it can be acknowledged that the subject-matter of claim

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

1 involves an inventive step, the same conclusion also applying to claims 2-47 as being dependent therein.

(ii) Claims 48-63

- (1) Neither D1 nor D2 suggest that the strategy of introducing foreign T-helper epitopes in a self-protein can be used for induction of CTL responses against cells expressing the unmodified self-protein. It has also to be noted that the strategy set forth in claim 48 includes the step of deliberately avoiding destruction/removal of CTL epitopes when inserting the foreign T-helper epitope and that the claim also involves a verification step where the CTL inducing capabilities of the resulting constructs are tested.
- (2) The technical problem solved by the invention may be regarded as the provision of means for selection of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic in an animal, said analogue being capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
- (3) In view of the above remarks, it can be considered that claim 48 proposes a non-obvious solution to the said technical problem. Therefore, it can be acknowledged that the subject-matter of claim 48 involves an inventive step, the same conclusion also applying to (a) claims 49-50, as being dependent therein, (b) claim 51 which relates to a method for the preparation of cell producing an analogue which has been selected according to the method of any one of claims 48-50 and (c) claims 52-63 as being dependent on claim 51.

(iii) Claims 64-83

As it can be considered that none of the cited prior art documents would have suggested, when taken alone or in combination, that

**INTERNATIONAL PRELIMINARY  
EXAMINATION REPORT - SEPARATE SHEET**

---

International application No. PCT/DK99/00525

human PSM analogues, FGF8b analogues and Her2 analogues could be advantageously prepared, the subject-matter of claims 64-83 can be regarded as inventive.

d) Industrial applicability (Article 33(4) PCT)

- (i) The subject-matter of claims 48-83 is considered to be susceptible of industrial applicability.
- (ii) For the assessment of the present claims 1-47 on the question whether they are industrially applicable, no unified criteria exist in the PCT Contracting States. The patentability can also be dependent upon the formulation of the claims. The EPO, for example, does not recognize as industrially applicable the subject-matter of claims to the use of a compound in medical treatment, but may allow, however, claims to a known compound for first use in medical treatment and the use of such a compound for the manufacture of a medicament for a new medical treatment.

3. Comments with respect to item VIII

It would appear that it was omitted to specify in claim 54 that it is directed to the method according to any one of the preceding claims 51-53.

## CLAIMS

1. A method for down-regulating cells expressing a cell-associated polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, by inducing a specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response against cells carrying the cell-associated polypeptide antigen on their surface or harbouring the cell-associated polypeptide antigen in their intracellular compartment, the method comprising effecting, in the animal, simultaneous presentation by a suitable antigen presenting cell (APC) of
  - 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
  - 2) at least one first T-helper lymphocyte ( $T_H$ ) epitope which is foreign to the animal.
2. The method according to claim 1, wherein the animal is a human being.
3. The method according to claim 1 or 2, wherein said at least one CTL epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class I molecule on the surface of the APC and/or wherein said at least one first foreign  $T_H$  epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class II molecule on the surface of the APC.
4. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the APC is a dendritic cell or a macrophage.
5. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the polypeptide antigen is selected from a tumour-associated polypeptide antigen, a self-protein, a viral polypeptide antigen, and a polypeptide antigen derived from an intracellular parasite or bacterium.
6. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein presentation by the APC of the CTL epitope and the first foreign  $T_H$  epitope is effected by presenting the animal's immune system with at least one first analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said first analogue comprising a variation of the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide antigen, said variation containing at least the CTL epitope and the first foreign  $T_H$  epitope.
7. The method according to claim 6, wherein the at least first analogue contains a substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
8. The method according to claim 7, wherein the substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes in the amino acid sequence of the analogue are recognized by at least 90% of the MHC-I haplotypes recognizing all known and predicted CTL epitopes in the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
9. The method according to any one of claims 6-8, wherein substantially all known CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the analogue and/or wherein substantially all predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the at least first analogue.
10. The method according to any one of claims 6-9, wherein the at least one first analogue further comprises a part consisting of a modification of the structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of the animal with the first analogue induces production of antibodies in the animal against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
11. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, which comprises effecting presentation to the animal's immune system of an immunogenically effective amount of at least one second analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said second analogue containing a modification of the structure of the polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of

the animal with the second analogue induces production of antibodies against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

12. The method according to claim 11, wherein the modification comprises that at least one second foreign  $T_H$  epitope is included in the second analogue.

13. The method according to any one of claims 6-12, wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) comprise(s) a substantial fraction of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen's B-cell epitopes.

14. The method according to any one of claims 6-13, wherein the variation and/or modification involves amino acid substitution and/or deletion and/or insertion and/or addition.

15. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein the variation and/or modification comprises that

- at least one first moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said first moiety effecting targeting of the analogue to an antigen presenting cell (APC), and/or
- at least one second moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said second moiety stimulating the immune system, and/or
- at least one third moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said third moiety optimizing presentation of the analogue to the immune system.

16. The method according to any one of claims 6-15, wherein the variation and/or modification includes duplication of at least one B-cell epitope or of at least one CTL epitope of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen

17. The method according to any one of claims 6-16, wherein the variation and/or modification includes introduction of a hapten.

18. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are immunodominant.

19. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are promiscuous.

20. The method according to any one of claims 12-19, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are selected from a natural  $T_H$  epitope and an artificial MHC-II binding peptide sequence.

21. The method according to claim 20, wherein the natural  $T_H$  epitope is selected from a Tetanus toxoid epitope such as P2 or P30, a diphtheria toxoid epitope, an influenza virus hemagglutinin epitope, and a *P. falciparum* CS epitope.

22. The method according to any one of claims 12-21, wherein the first and/or second  $T_H$  epitopes and/or first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of

- side groups attached covalently or non-covalently to suitable chemical groups in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen or a subsequence thereof, and/or
- fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

23. The method according to claim 22, wherein the first moiety is a substantially specific binding partner for an APC specific surface antigen such as a carbohydrate for which there is a receptor on the APC, e.g. mannan or mannose.

24. The method according to any one of claims 15-23, wherein the second moiety is a cytokine selected from interferon  $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), Flt3L, interleukin 1 (IL-1), interleukin 2 (IL-2), interleukin 4 (IL-4), interleukin 6 (IL-6), interleukin 12 (IL-12), interleukin 13 (IL-13), interleukin 15 (IL-15), and granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), or an effective part thereof; a heat-shock protein selected from HSP70, HSP90, HSC70, GRP94, and calreticulin (CRT), or an effective part thereof; or a hormone.

25. The method according to any one of claims 15-24, wherein the third moiety is a lipid such as a palmitoyl group, a myristyl group, a farnesyl group, a geranyl-geranyl group, a GPI-anchor, and an N-acyl diglyceride group.

26. The method according to claim any one of claims 6-25, wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) has/have substantially the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

27. The method according to any one of claims 6-26, wherein presentation by the APC is effected by administering, to the animal, an immunogenically effective amount of the at least one first analogue.

28. The method according to claim 27, wherein is also administered an immunologically effective amount of the at least one second analogue.

29. The method according to claim 27 or 28, wherein said at least one first and/or second analogue(s) is/are formulated together with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier and/or vehicle and, optionally an adjuvant.

30. The method according to claim 29, wherein said adjuvant facilitates uptake by APCs, such as dendritic cells, of the at least first and/or second analogues.

31. The method according to claim 30, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of an immune targeting adjuvant; an immune modulating adjuvant such as a toxin, a cytokine, and a mycobacterial derivative; an oil formulation; a polymer; a micelle forming adjuvant; a saponin; an immunostimulating complex matrix (ISCOM matrix); a particle; DDA; aluminium adjuvants; DNA adjuvants;  $\gamma$ -inulin; and an encapsulating adjuvant.

32. The method according to claim 31, wherein the cytokine is as defined as in claim 24, or an effective part thereof, wherein the toxin is selected from the group consisting of listeriolysin (LLO), Lipid A (MPL, L180.5/RaILPS), and heat-labile enterotoxin, wherein the mycobacterial derivative is selected from the group consisting of muramyl dipeptide, complete Freund's adjuvant, RIBI, and a diester of trehalose such as TDM and TDE, wherein the immune targeting adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of CD40 ligand, CD40 antibodies or specifically binding fragments thereof, mannose, a Fab fragment, and CTLA-4, wherein the oil formulation comprises squalene or incomplete Freund's adjuvant, wherein the polymer is selected from the group consisting of a carbohydrate such as dextran, PEG, starch, mannan, and mannose; a plastic polymer such as; and latex such as latex beads, wherein the saponin is Quillaja saponaria saponin, Quil A, and QS21, and wherein the particle comprises latex or dextran.

33. The method according to any one of claims 27-32, which includes administration via a route selected from the oral route and the parenteral route such as the intradermal, the subdermal, the intracutaneous, the subcutaneous; the peritoneal, the buccal, the sublingual, the epidural, the spinal, the anal, and the intracranial routes.

34. The method according to any of claim 27-33, which includes at least one administration a year, such as at least 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 12 administrations a year.

35. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying a nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the at least one CTL epitope and the at least one  $T_H$  epitope.

36. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least first analogue.

37. The method according to any one of claims 15-26, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

38. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 or 36, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least second analogue.

39. The method according to claim 38, wherein the non-pathogenic microorganism or virus is administered once to the animal.

40. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and/or the at least one B-cell epitope, and the at least one first foreign  $T_H$  epitope.

41. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first analogue.

42. The method according to any one of claims 15-26, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by in vivo introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

43. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 and 41, which further comprises in vivo introduction, into the APC, of at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the second analogue.

44. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by in vivo co-introducing, into the APC, at least two nucleic acid fragments, wherein one encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and wherein another encodes and expresses the at least one first foreign  $T_H$  epitope, and wherein the first foreign  $T_H$  epitope is as defined in any one of claims 1, 2 and 21-24.

45. The method according to any one of claims 40-44, wherein the nucleic acid fragment(s) introduced is/are selected from naked DNA, DNA formulated with charged or uncharged lipids, DNA formulated in liposomes, DNA included in a viral vector, DNA formulated with a transfection-



facilitating protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting carbohydrate, DNA formulated with Calcium precipitating agents, DNA coupled to an inert carrier molecule, and DNA formulated with an adjuvant.

46. The method according to claim 45, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of the adjuvants defined in any one of claims 30-32.

47. The method according to any one of claims 40-46, wherein the mode of administration is as defined in claim 33 or 34.

48. A method for selection of an immunogenic analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in an animal, said immunogenic analogue being capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising

- a) identifying at least one subsequence of the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen which does not contain known or predicted CTL epitopes,
- b) preparing at least one putatively immunogenic analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen by introducing, in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, at least one  $T_H$  epitope foreign to the animal in a position within the at least one subsequence identified in step a), and
- c) selecting the/those analogues prepared in step b) which are verifiably capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal.

49. The method according to claim 48, wherein

- 1) the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain cysteine residues, or, alternatively, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the pattern of cysteine residues, and/or
- 2) the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain known or predicted glycosylation sites, or, alternatively, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the glycosylation pattern, and/or
- 3) the subsequence identified in step a) contributes significantly to a pathological effect exerted by the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein the introduction in step b) of the foreign  $T_H$  epitope reduces or abolishes said pathological effect, and/or
- 4) the subsequence identified in step a) is homologous to an amino acid sequence of a different protein antigen of the animal, and wherein the introduction of the  $T_H$  epitope in step b) substantially removes the homology, and/or
- 5) introduction in step b) of the foreign  $T_H$  epitope results in preservation of a substantial fraction of B-cell epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

50. The method according to claim 49 when including variant 5, wherein the analogue has the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

51. A method for the preparation of cell producing an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising introducing, into a vector, a nucleic acid sequence encoding an analogue which has been selected according to the method of any one of claims 48-50 and transforming a suitable host cell with the vector.

52. A method for the preparation of an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising culturing the cell obtained according to the method of claim 51 under conditions

facilitating expression of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and recovering the analogue from the culture supernatant or from the cells.

53. The method according to claim 52 which further comprises the step of purifying the recovered analogue and, optionally subjecting the purified product to artificial post-translational modifications such as refolding, treatment with enzymes, chemical modification, and conjugation.

54. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the weak cell-associated antigen is selected from the group consisting of 5 alpha reductase,  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein, AM-1, APC, APRIL, BAGE,  $\beta$ -catenin, Bcl2, bcr-abl (b3a2), CA-125, CASP-8 / FLICE, Cathepsins, CD19, CD20, CD21, CD23, CD22, CD33, CD35, CD44, CD45, CD46, CD5, CD52, CD55 (791Tgp72), CD59, CDC27, CDK4, CEA, c-myc, Cox-2, DCC, DcR3, E6 / E7, EGFR, EMBP, Ena78, farsyl transferase, FGF8a or FGF8b, FLK-1/KDR, Folic Acid Receptor, G250, GAGE-Family, gastrin 17, Gastrin-releasing hormone (Bombesin), GD2 / GD3 / GM2, GnRH, GnTV, GP1, gp100 / Pmel 17, gp-100-in4, gp15, gp75 / TRP-1, hCG, Heparanase, Her2 / neu, HMTV, Hsp70, hTERT (telomerase), IGFR1, IL-13R, iNOS, Ki 67, KIAA0205, K-ras, H-ras, N-ras, KSA (CO17-1A), LDLR-FUT, MAGE Family (MAGE-1, MAGE-2, MAGE-3, etc), Mammaglobin, MAP17, Melan-A / MART-1, mesothelin, MIC A/B, MT-MMP's, Mox1, Mucin such as MUC-1, MUC-2, MUC-3, and MUC-4 being aberrantly glycosylated, MUM-1, NY-ESO-1, Osteonectin, p15, P170 / MDR1, p53, p97 / melanotransferrin, PAI-1, PDGF, Plasminogen (uPA), PRAME, Probasin, Progenipoinetin, PSA, PSM, RAGE-1, Rb, RCAS1, SART-1, SSX gene family, STAT3, STn (mucin assoc.), TAG-72, TGF- $\alpha$ , TGF- $\beta$ , Thymosin  $\beta$  15, TNF- $\alpha$ , TPA, TPI, TRP-2, Tyrosinase, VEGF, ZAG, p16INK4, and Glutathione S-transferase.

55. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is human PSM.

56. The method according to claim 55, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the PSM amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 2 positions 16-52 and/or 87-108 and/or 210-230 and/or 269-289 and/or 298-324 and/or 442-465 and/or 488-514 and/or 598-630 and/or 643-662 and/or 672-699.

57. The method according to claim 55 or 56 used in the treatment or amelioration of prostate cancer.

58. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is fibroblast growth factor 8b (FGF8b).

59. The method according to claim 58, where the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 6 positions 1-54 and/or 178-215 and/or 55-58 and/or 63-68 and/or 72-76 and/or 85-91 and/or 95-102 and/or 106-111 and/or 115-120 and/or 128-134 and/or 138-144 and/or 149-154 and/or 158-162 and/or 173-177, and wherein the introduction preferably does not substantially involve amino acids 26-45 and amino acids 186-215.

60. The method according to claim 58 or 59 used in the treatment or amelioration of cancer such as prostate cancer and breast cancer.

61. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is Her2.

62. The method according to claim 61, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the Her2 amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 3 positions 5-25 and/or 59-73 and/or 103-

117 and/or 149-163 and/or 210-224 and/or 250-264 and/or 325-339 and/or 369-383 and/or 465-479 and/or 579-593 and/or 632-652 and/or 653-667 and/or 661-675 and/or 695-709 and/or 710-730.

63. The method according to claim 61 or 62 used in the treatment or amelioration of breast cancer.

64. An analogue of human PSM which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of PSM and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

65. The analogue according to claim 64, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the PSM amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the PSM amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the PSM amino acid sequence.

66. The analogue according to claim 65, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 56.

67. An analogue of human Her2 which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of Her2 and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

68. The analogue according to claim 67, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the Her2 amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence.

69. The analogue according to claim 68, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 62.

70. An analogue of human/murine FGF8b which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of FGF8b and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

71. The analogue according to claim 70, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence.

72. The analogue according to claim 71, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 59.

73. An immunogenic composition which comprises, as an effective immunogenic agent the analogue according to any one of claims 64-72 in admixture with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier or vehicle, and optionally an adjuvant.

74. A nucleic acid fragment which encodes an analogue according to any one of claims 64-72.

75. A vector carrying the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74.

76. The vector according to claim 75 which is capable of autonomous replication.

77. The vector according to claim 75 or 76 which is selected from the group consisting of a plasmid, a phage, a cosmid, a mini-chromosome, and a virus.

78. The vector according to any one of claims 75-77, comprising, in the 5'63' direction and in operable linkage, a promoter for driving expression of the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74, optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a leader peptide enabling secretion of or integration into the membrane of the polypeptide fragment, the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74, and optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a terminator.

79. The vector according to any one of claims 75-78 which, when introduced into a host cell, is integrated in the host cell genome or is not capable of being integrated in the host cell genome.

80. A transformed cell carrying the vector of any one of claims 75-79.

81. A composition for inducing production of antibodies against PSM, Her2 or FGF8b, the composition comprising

- 1) a nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74 or a vector according to any one of claims 75-79, and
- 2) a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable diluent and/or vehicle and/or adjuvant.

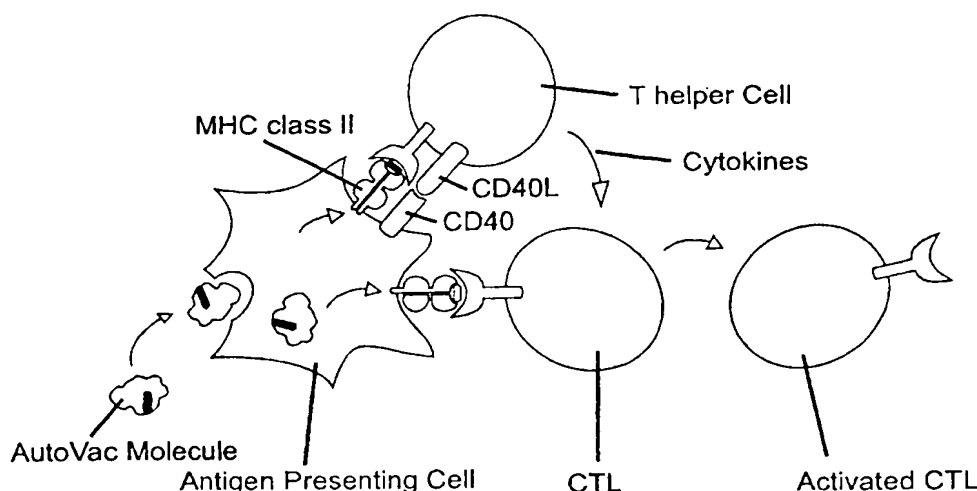
82. A stable cell line which carries the vector according to any one of claims 75-79 and which expresses the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74, and which optionally secretes or carries the analogue according to any one of claims 64-72 on its surface.

83. A method for the preparation of the cell according to claim 80, the method comprising transforming a host cell with the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74 or with the vector according to any one of claims 75-79.

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> : <b>A61K 39/00</b>		(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 00/20027</b>
<b>A2</b>		(43) International Publication Date: 13 April 2000 (13.04.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/DK99/00525		KARLSSON, Gunilla [SE/DK]; Collingsgade 6A, 3. tv., DK-2100 København ø (DK).
(22) International Filing Date: 5 October 1999 (05.10.99)		(74) Agent: PLOUGMANN, VINGTOFT & PARTNERS A/S; Sankt Annae Plads 11, P.O. Box 3007, DK-1021 Copenhagen K (DK).
(30) Priority Data: PA 1998 01261 5 October 1998 (05.10.98) DK 60/105,011 20 October 1998 (20.10.98) US		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AT (Utility model), AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, CZ (Utility model), DE, DE (Utility model), DK, DK (Utility model), DM, EE, EE (Utility model), ES, FI, FI (Utility model), GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SK (Utility model), SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): M & E BIOTECH A/S [DK/DK]; Kogle Allé 6, DK-2970 Hørsholm (DK).		
(72) Inventors; and		
(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): STEINAA, Lucilla [DK/DK]; Viktoriagade 28, 3. th., DK-1655 København V (DK). MOURITSEN, Søren [DK/DK]; Lindevangsvej 24, DK-3460 Birkerød (DK). NIELSEN, Klaus, Gregorius [DK/DK]; Lykkesborg Allé 15, DK-2860 Søborg (DK). HAANING, Jesper [DK/DK]; Biskop Svanes Vej 2E, DK-3460 Birkerød (DK). LEACH, Dana [US/DK]; Ved Store Dyrehave 44, DK-3400 Hillerød (DK). DALUM, Iben [DK/DK]; Olgasvej 13, DK-2970 Hørsholm (DK). GAUTAM, Anand [GB/DK]; Ved Store Dyrehave 22, st.tv., DK-3400 Hillerød (DK). BIRK, Peter [DK/DK]; Rudolph Berghsgade 5, DK-2100 København ø (DK).		
		<b>Published</b> Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

(54) Title: NOVEL METHODS FOR THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION



## (57) Abstract

A method is disclosed for inducing cell-mediated immunity against cellular antigens. More specifically, the invention provides for a method for inducing cytotoxic T-lymphocyte immunity against weak antigens, notably self-proteins. The method entails that antigen presenting cells are induced to present at least one CTL epitope of the weak antigen and at the same time presenting at least one foreign T-helper lymphocyte epitope. In a preferred embodiment, the antigen is a cancer specific antigen, e.g. PSM, Her2, or FGF8b. The method can be exercised by using traditional polypeptide vaccination, but also by using live attenuated vaccines or nucleic acid vaccination. The invention furthermore provides immunogenic analogues of PSM, Her2 and FGF8b, as well as nucleic acid molecules encoding these analogues. Also vectors and transformed cells are disclosed. The invention also provides for a method for identification of immunogenic analogues of weak or non-immunogenic antigens.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakistan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

## NOVEL METHODS FOR THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION

## FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to novel methods for combatting diseases, such as cancers, which are characterized by the presence of cell-associated gene expression products which are non-immunogenic or poorly immunogenic. In particular, the present invention relates to methods for inducing an immune response conducted by cytotoxic T-lymphocytes (CTLs), whereby cells carrying epitopes from the gene expression products are attacked and killed by the CTLs. The invention also relates to a method of preparing immunogenic, modified polypeptide antigens which are derived from weakly immunogenic antigens.

The invention further relates to a series of applications of Applicants' AutoVac technology (which is the subject of WO 95/05849) within the field of therapeutic vaccination against cancer.

## BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The idea of vaccinating against cancer has been around for more than hundred years and has enjoyed recurrent bursts of activity, particularly since the turn of this century.

However, during the past 10 years the understanding of the fundamental molecular mechanisms of the immune response has improved considerably. Among the most important milestones achieved during this period has been the discovery of the still growing list of cytokines and growth factors, the understanding of the mechanisms of interaction between T and B cells as well as the establishment of the cellular antigen processing pathways including the role and structure of the MHC class I and II molecules in antigen presentation. Import-

tant discoveries with regard to cancer immunology - although still not fully understood - were also the elucidation of the mechanisms underlying induction of immunological tolerance in a host. All this research has led to a huge amount of efforts  
5 in order to develop new treatments for human cancer.

Depending on how tumour immunity is acquired by the patient, immunotherapy regimens can be categorised as either passive or active. In passive immunotherapy regimens the patient passively receives immune components such as cytokines, antibodies,  
10 cytotoxic T-cells, or lymphocyte activated killer (LAK) cells. In contrast, active specific immunotherapy protocols encompass actively inducing tumour immunity by vaccination with the tumour cell or its antigenic components. This latter form of treatment is preferred because the immunity is prolonged.

15 Passive and active cancer vaccines have focussed on inducing either humoral or cellular immune responses. For active vaccines it is well established that induction of CD4 positive T helper cells is necessary in order to secondarily induce either antibodies or cytotoxic CD8 positive T cells.

#### 20 *Passive vaccination with antibodies*

Since the discovery of the monoclonal antibody technology in the mid-seventies, a large number of therapeutic monoclonal antibodies directed against tumour specific or tumour associated antigens has been developed. Monoclonal antibody therapy,  
25 however, gives rise to several serious problems:

- Injection of these foreign substances induces an immune response in the patient towards the injected antibodies, which may lead to less efficient treatment as well as to serious allergic side-effects in the patients.



- Monoclonal antibodies usually must be administered in large amounts. This is a problem, since the production costs of monoclonal antibodies are huge.
  - Monoclonal antibodies must be administered via the parenteral route and due to the relatively large amounts needed, the patients frequently must be hospitalised during the treatment.
  - Injections of monoclonal antibodies must be repeated at rather short intervals (weeks) in order to maintain therapeutic effect.
  - Monoclonal antibodies are usually not able to activate secondary effector systems of the immune system such as complement, NK-cells or macrophage killing of tumour cells.
- 15 The latter disadvantage is of particular importance in cancer therapy and may be an important reason why monoclonal antibody therapy of cancer in several cases has not been particularly successful. The so-called humanised monoclonal antibodies now used by many companies are less immunogenic, but unfortunately
- 20 they are even less capable of activating the secondary immune effector systems. Furthermore, examples of secondary out-growth of tumours lacking the original tumour antigen have been observed, since these antibodies do not induce "innocent bystander" effects on tumour cells not carrying the tumour
- 25 antigen.

The poor effector capability of the monoclonal antibodies has led to the development of monoclonal antibodies chemically conjugated to different toxins and radioisotopes. Pharmacia Upjohn AB has e.g. developed a conjugate between a monoclonal

30 tumour specific antibody and the *Staphylococcus aureus* toxin A

with the purpose of activating T cells in the tumour. Medarex Inc. has developed bispecific monoclonal antibodies containing a tumour specific Fab fragment as well as an Fc-receptor specific antibody fragment with the purpose of activating  
5 macrophage killing of tumour cells. Both constructs are more effective than the monoclonal antibody alone, but they are also more expensive and immunogenic. Antibodies conjugated to radioisotopes are also expensive as well as immunogenic and other general toxic side-effects are observed.

10 The appearance of the monoclonal antibody technology was a major step forward which enabled the production of well-defined, high-affinity binding molecules. However, being monoclonal these antibodies only react with a single type of epitope on a tumour antigen. This is the major reason why they  
15 usually are not able to activate the complement system or binding to the Fc-receptors of NK-cells and macrophages. These very powerful effector systems usually require the co-localisation of multiple Fc antibody fragments protruding from the antigen.

20 Other researchers have therefore attempted to use two monoclonal antibodies in combination and this has led to an improved effect. It therefore seems very reasonable instead to attack tumour cells with highly specific polyclonal antibodies directed against a tumour specific, or against (over-expressed)  
25 tumour associated antigens or growth factor receptors. Such antibodies would be fully capable of activating the secondary effector systems mentioned above. Furthermore, it is likely that the local inflammatory reaction induced by these effector systems could lead to secondary effects on "innocent by-  
30 stander" cells not expressing the tumour antigen in question as well as to activation of tumour specific TIL's (tumour infiltrating lymphocytes) in the tumour tissue. Such effects

have been observed by Medarex Inc. using their bi-specific monoclonal antibody conjugates.

Since the discovery of the monoclonal antibody technology the potential use of polyclonal antibodies for cancer therapy has not been explored very much (except for the antigens described below). One major reason is that well-defined tumour specific or tumour associated surface antigens only have been characterised within the recent years, but - more importantly - many of these have turned out to be self-antigens and therefore non-immunogenic. Accordingly, xenogenic polyclonal antibodies would necessarily have been used to study the effects. However, such antibodies induce a vigorous immune response towards the injected foreign polyclonal antibodies which rapidly eliminate the therapeutic effects.

#### 15 *Active vaccination to induce antibodies*

Recent attempts to induce therapeutic polyclonal autoantibodies in cancer patients by active vaccination have been successful. Vaccines against membrane bound carbohydrate self-antigens (such as the O-linked aberrantly expressed Tn and sTn-antigens and the ganglioside liposaccharides GM2 and GD3) have been developed. These small carbohydrate structures are, however, very poor antigens so conjugates of these molecules with carrier molecules such as keyhole limpet haemocyanin (KLH) or sheep mucins (containing Tn- and sTn) must be used. In melanoma patients the induction of anti-GM2 antibodies were associated with a prolonged disease-free interval and overall survival after a minimum follow-up of fifty-one months. Also randomised phase II studies have been conducted on breast cancer patients using a conjugate of sTn and KLH in the DETOX-B adjuvant (BIOMIRA Inc.) showing that sTn immune patients had a significantly longer median survival compared to controls. Another example of the active induction of polyclonal antio-

dies in cancer is the use of idiotype specific vaccination against B-cell lymphomas, which - although it has been promising - is limited to this cancer type only.

Finally, the US company Aphton Inc. has developed active  
5 conjugate vaccines against gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH) and gastrin. It has been demonstrated, that this vaccine is capable of controlling the biological activity of these hormones, which also can function as autocrine growth factors for certain tumour cells. Successful phase II clinical  
10 trials have been conducted on gastrointestinal cancer patients and phase III clinical trials are underway.

#### *Cytotoxic T-cells*

It has been clearly demonstrated by several groups that tumour specific cytotoxic T cells (CTL's) are present in many tu-  
15 mours. These CTL's are termed tumour infiltrating lymphocytes (TIL's). However, these cells are somehow rendered non-responsive or anergic by several different possible mechanisms including secretion of immunosuppressive cytokines by the tumour cells, lack of co-stimulatory signals, down regulation  
20 of MHC class I molecules etc.

There has been many attempts to isolate the tumour specific HLA class I bound peptides recognised by TILs, and in some cases it has also been successful (e.g. peptides from the melanoma associated antigens). Such peptides have been used to  
25 induce a tumour specific immune response in the host, but the practical use of tumour specific peptides in vaccines is restricted to a limited segment of the population due to the narrow HLA class I binding specificity of the peptides. Furthermore, it is usually relatively difficult to evoke a CTL  
30 response in vivo using synthetic peptides due to the low

biological half-life of these substances as well as the difficulties with exogenous priming of MHC class I molecules.

Many other approaches have been attempted in order to evoke a tumour specific CTL response including the use of cytokines  
5 (e.g. IL-2, IFN- $\gamma$ , IL-6, IL-4, IL-10 or GM-CSF) or co-stimulatory molecules (B7) either in soluble form or expressed by the transfected tumour cell. Furthermore, immunisations with allogenic or autologous whole cells, or of tumour antigens prepared in specialised adjuvants designed to present the  
10 antigen via the MHC class I antigen presentation route, or tumour antigens expressed in e.g. vaccinia vectors etc. have been used with varying success. Still the general belief among tumour immunologists is therefore that one of the best ways to eliminate tumours would be to induce a strong specific anti-  
15 tumour CTL response.

Apart from the fact that these treatments usually are very expensive and difficult to reproduce, it has also turned out to be difficult to obtain a good immune response towards the tumour since many of the tumour associated antigens are true  
20 self-proteins to which most T cells appear to be tolerant. Therefore, it seems necessary to induce a controlled cellular autoimmune condition in the patient.

#### OBJECT OF THE INVENTION

It is an object of the present invention to provide improved  
25 methods and agents for inducing immune responses in host organisms against undesirable antigens, e.g. tumour antigens. It is a further object to provide a method for preparing polypeptide analogues of such undesirable antigens, analogues which are capable of inducing an effective immune response  
30 against the undesired antigen.

## SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Presentation of antigens has dogmatically been thought of as two discrete pathways, a class II exogenous and a class I endogenous pathway.

5 Briefly, a foreign protein from outside the cell or from the cell membrane is taken up by the APC as an endosome which fuses with an intracellular compartment which contains proteolytic enzymes and MHC class II molecules. Some of the produced peptides bind to class II, which then are transloca-  
10 ted to the cell membrane.

The class I endogenous pathway is characterised by the predominant presentation of cytosolic proteins. This is believed to occur by proteasome mediated cleavage followed by transportation of the peptides into the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) via  
15 TAP molecules located in the membrane of the ER. In ER the peptides bind to class I followed by transportation to the plasma membrane.

However, these 2 pathways are not fully distinct. For example it is known that dendritic cells and to some extent macro-  
20 phages are capable of endocytosing (pinocytosing) extracellular proteins and subsequently present them in the context of MHC class I. It has also previously been demonstrated that using specialised administration routes, e.g. by coupling to iron oxide beads, exogenous antigens are capable of entering  
25 the Class I pathway (Rock, 1996). This mechanism seems central, because of the importance of a concomitant expression of both class I and class II on the same APC to elicit a three cell type cluster. This three cell type cluster of interaction has been proposed by Mitchison (1987) and later by other  
30 authors. They showed the importance of concomitant presenta-

tion of class I and class II epitopes on the same APC. According to the recently described mechanism for CTL activation (cf. Lanzavecchia, 1998, Nature **393**: 413, Matzinger, 1999, Nature Med. **5**: 616, Ridge et al., 1998, Nature **393**: 474, 5 Bennett et al., 1998, Nature **393**: 478, Schoenberger et al., 1998, Nature **393**: 480, Ossendrop et al., 1998, J. Exp. Med **187**: 693, and Mackey et al., 1998, J. Immunol **161**: 2094), professional APCs presenting antigen on MHC class II are recognized by T helper cells. This results in an activation of 10 the APC (mediated by interaction by CD40L on the T helper cell and CD40 on the APC). This enables the APC to directly stimulate CTLs which are thereby activated. Cf. also Fig. 2.

It has previously been demonstrated that insertion of a foreign MHC class II restricted T helper cell epitope into a 15 self-antigen results in the provision of an antigen capable of inducing strong cross-reactive antibody responses directed against the non-modified self-antigen (cf. applicant's WO 95/05849). It was shown that the autoantibody induction is caused by specific T cell help induced by the inserted foreign 20 epitope.

However, we have come to the conclusion that modified self-antigens - with the aid of appropriate adjuvants - ought to be capable of also inducing strong CTL responses against MHC class I restricted self-epitopes and hence the technology 25 described in WO 95/05849 can be adapted to also provide vaccination against intracellular and other cell-associated antigens which have epitopes presented in the context of MHC Class I.

The autovaccine technology described in WO 95/05849 has the 30 effect that specific T cell help is provided to self-reactive B cells when a modified self-antigen is administered for uptake into the MHC class II antigen processing pathway (cf.

Fig. 1, and Dalum I et al., 1996, J. Immunol. **157**: 4796-4804 as well as Dalum I et al., 1999, Nature Biotechnol. **17**: 666-669). It was shown that potentially self-reactive B-lymphocytes recognizing self-proteins are physiologically present in normal individuals. However, in order for these B-lymphocytes to be induced to actually produce antibodies reactive with the relevant self-proteins, assistance is needed from cytokine producing T-helper lymphocytes ( $T_H$ -cells or  $T_H$ -lymphocytes). Normally this help is not provided because T-lymphocytes in general do not recognize T-cell epitopes derived from self-proteins when presented by antigen presenting cells (APCs). However, by providing an element of "foreignness" in a self-protein (*i.e.* by introducing an immunologically significant modification), T-cells recognizing the foreign element are activated upon recognizing the foreign epitope on an APC (such as, initially, a mononuclear cell). Polyclonal B-lymphocytes (which present T-cell epitopes) capable of recognising self-epitopes on the modified self-protein also internalise the antigen and subsequently presents the foreign T-cell epitope(s) thereof, and the activated T-lymphocytes subsequently provide cytokine help to these self-reactive polyclonal B-lymphocytes. Since the antibodies produced by these polyclonal B-lymphocytes are reactive with different epitopes on the modified polypeptide, including those which are also present in the native polypeptide, an antibody cross-reactive with the non-modified self-protein is induced. In conclusion, the T-lymphocytes can be led to act as if the population of polyclonal B-lymphocytes have recognised an entirely foreign antigen, whereas in fact only the inserted epitope(s) is/are foreign to the host. In this way, antibodies capable of cross-reacting with non-modified self-antigens are induced.

As mentioned above, CTL's also require specific T cell help, although the mechanism for this is still not clear.



We have based the present invention on our novel theory that the self-proteins containing foreign MHC class II epitopes, following exogenous uptake, can gain access into the MHC class I antigen processing pathway of e.g. macrophages and dendritic cells. In this way a strong CTL response against subdominant epitopes in the self-protein could be induced. Alternatively, genes encoding modified tumour antigens could be administrated as nucleic acid vaccines eventually also leading to MHC class II as well as MHC class I mediated immune responses.

10 Tumour cells are very poor antigen presenting cells due to insufficient MHC class I expression, lack of co-stimulatory molecules or secretion of immunosuppressive cytokines etc. Using the autovaccine constructs and vaccination protocol mentioned above the modified tumour antigen could be presented  
15 by MHC class I as well as by MHC class II molecules on professional antigen presenting cells. Co-presentation of subdominant self-epitopes on MHC class I and immunodominant foreign epitopes on MHC class II molecules would mediate a direct cytokine help from activated MHC class II restricted T-helper  
20 cells to MHC class I restricted CTLs (Fig. 2). This will in our opinion lead to a specific break of the T cell autotolerance towards the tumour antigen and this is exactly what is desired in cancer immunotherapy.

In conclusion, a vaccine constructed using the technology  
25 outlined above will induce a humoral autoantibody response with secondary activation of complement and antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity (ADCC) activity. It is also expected that it will induce a cytotoxic T cell response directed against e.g. a tumour specific membrane antigen.

30 Hence, in the broadest and most general scope, the present invention relates to a method for inducing an immune response against a polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human

being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, the method comprising effecting simultaneous presentation by antigen presenting cells (APCs) from the animal's immune system of an immunogenically effective amount of

- 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the polypeptide antigen and/or at least one B-cell epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
- 2) at least one first T helper cell epitope ( $T_H$  epitope) which is foreign to the animal.

In a more specific variant of the inventive method, the invention relates to a method for down-regulating a cell-associated polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, by inducing a specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response against cells carrying the cell-associated polypeptide antigen on their surface or harbouring the cell-associated polypeptide antigen in their intracellular compartment, the method comprising effecting, in the animal, simultaneous presentation by a suitable antigen presenting cell (APC) of

- 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
- 2) at least one first T-helper lymphocyte ( $T_H$ ) epitope which is foreign to the animal.

Also, the novel strategy for preparing an immunogenic agent is part of the invention. This novel strategy encompasses the selection and production of analogues of weak cell-associated antigens, where the preservation of a substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes is aimed at while at the same time introducing at least one foreign  $T_H$  epitope.

Furthermore, the invention relates to certain specific immunogenic constructs based on known tumour-associated antigens as well as to compositions containing these constructs.

Finally, the invention relates to nucleic acid fragments, vectors, transformed cells and other tools useful in molecular biological methods for the production of the analogues of the tumour-associated antigens.

#### LEGENDS TO THE FIGURE

Fig. 1: The traditional AutoVac concept. A: Tolerodominant self-epitopes presented on MHC class II on an antigen presenting cell (APC) are ignored due to depletion in the T helper cell (Th) repertoire (T helper cell indicated with dotted lines). Inserted foreign immunodominant T cell epitopes presented on MHC class II activate T helper cells and B cells (B) specific for native parts of the self-protein presenting foreign immunodominant T cell epitopes on MHC class II are activated by the cytokine help provided by the T helper cell.

Fig. 2: The AutoVac concept for inducing a CTL response. Inserted foreign immunodominant T cell epitopes presented on MHC class II activate T helper cells. CTL's recognising subdominant self-epitopes presented on MHC class I are activated by the adjacent activated T helper cell.

Fig. 3: A schematic representation of the Her2 polypeptide with indications of epitopic regions and N-glycosylation sites. The 4 extracellular domains, the transmembrane (TM) domain and the 2 intracellular domains are represented with indications of sites with varying degrees of homology and sites containing putative/determined CTL epitopes.

Fig. 4: A schematic representation of the human PSM polypeptide with indications of insertion regions for the P2 and P30 epitopes.

Fig. 5: The FGF genes and proteins. A: Exon-intron structure of the human and mouse FGF8 genes. Below is illustrated the eight different splice forms (from Gemel 1996). B: Amino acid sequence of the different FGF8 isoforms. The polypeptide stretches unique to FGF8b, FGF8f, and FGF8e are indicated by bold and italic or underlined typefaces. FGF8a is the shortest variant containing none of these highlighted sequences. The signal peptide is expected to be cleaved C-terminally to Ala22. The two cysteine residues found in mature FGF8 (all isoforms) are indicated by thick underlining. The two potential N-glycosylation sites of FGF8b are indicated by Ñ. Numbering is according to FGF8b.

Fig. 6: Illustrations of the four different variants of FGF8b designed for autovaccination. Upper panel: Theoretical models of the insertion-points of the epitopes using the FGF2 crystal structure as template. Lower panel: Amino acid sequences of the wild type FGF8b (WT) and the four variants F30N, F2I, F30I, and F2C. The signal peptide is marked with single underlining. The inserted peptides are marked with double underlining. The N-terminal sequence (MetAla) of all variants is due to generation of a Kozak-sequence (Kozak 1991) for better translation in eukaryotic systems.

## DETAILED DISCLOSURE OF THE INVENTION

### Definitions

In the following a number of terms used in the present specification and claims will be defined and explained in

detail in order to clarify the metes and bounds of the invention.

A "cell-associated polypeptide antigen" is in the present specification and claims intended to denote a polypeptide  
5 which is confined to a cell which is somehow related to a pathological process. Furthermore, the cell presents CTL epitopes of the polypeptide antigen bound to MHC Class I molecules on its surface. Cell-associated polypeptide antigens can therefore be truly intracellular antigens (and thereby  
10 unreachable for a humoral immune response) or antigens bound to the surface of the cells. The cell-associated antigen can be the product of the cell's own gene expression, of a intracellular parasite, of a virus, or of another cell. In the latter case the polypeptide antigen is subsequently associated  
15 with the cell which is involved in the pathological process.

The terms "T-lymphocyte" and "T-cell" will be used interchangeably for lymphocytes of thymic origin which are responsible for various cell mediated immune responses as well as for effector functions such as helper activity in the  
20 humoral immune response. Likewise, the terms "B-lymphocyte" and "B-cell" will be used interchangeably for antibody-producing lymphocytes.

An "antigen presenting cell" (APC) is a cell which presents epitopes to T-cells. Typical antigen-presenting cells are  
25 macrophages, dendritic cells and other phagocytizing and pinocytizing cells. It should be noted that B-cells also functions as APCs by presenting  $T_H$  epitopes bound to MCH class II molecules to  $T_H$  cells but when generally using the term APC in the present specification and claims it is intended to  
30 refer to the above-mentioned phagocytizing and pinocytizing cells.

"Helper T-lymphocytes" or "T<sub>H</sub> cells" denotes CD4 positive T-cells which provide help to B-cells and cytotoxic T-cells via the recognition of T<sub>H</sub> epitopes bound to MHC Class II molecules on antigen presenting cells.

- 5 The term "cytotoxic T-lymphocyte" (CTL) will be used for CD8 positive T-cells which require the assistance of T<sub>H</sub> cells in order to become activated.

A "specific" immune response is in the present context intended to denote a polyclonal immune response directed predominantly against a molecule or a group of quasi-identical molecules or, alternatively, against cells which present CTL epitopes of the molecule or the group of quasi-identical molecules.

A "weak or non-immunogenic polypeptide antigen" is herein intended to denote polypeptides having the amino acid sequence of the weak cell-associated protein antigens derived from the animal in question (e.g. a human), but also polypeptides having the amino acid sequence identical to analogues of such proteins isolated from other species are embraced by the term.

20 Also forms of the polypeptides having differing glycosylation patterns because of their production in heterologous systems (e.g. yeasts or other non-mammalian eukaryotic expression systems or even prokaryotic systems) are included within the boundaries of the term. It should, however, be noted that when

25 using the term, it is intended that the polypeptide in question is normally non-immunogenic or only weakly immunogenic in its natural localisation in the animal to be treated.

The term "polypeptide" is in the present context intended to mean both short peptides of from 2 to 10 amino acid residues, oligopeptides of from 11 to 100 amino acid residues, and

30 polypeptides of more than 100 amino acid residues. Further-

more, the term is also intended to include proteins, i.e. functional biomolecules comprising at least one polypeptide; when comprising at least two polypeptides, these may form complexes, be covalently linked, or may be non-covalently  
5 linked. The polypeptide(s) in a protein can be glycosylated and/or lipidated and/or comprise prosthetic groups.

The term "subsequence" means any consecutive stretch of at least 3 amino acids or, when relevant, of at least 3 nucleotides, derived directly from a naturally occurring amino acid  
10 sequence or nucleic acid sequence, respectively.

The term "animal" is in the present context in general intended to denote an animal species (preferably mammalian), such as *Homo sapiens*, *Canis domesticus*, etc. and not just one single animal. However, the term also denotes a population of  
15 such an animal species, since it is important that the individuals immunized according to the method of the invention all harbour substantially the same weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen allowing for immunization of the animals with the same immunogen(s). If, for instance, genetic variants of  
20 polypeptides exist in different human populations it may be necessary to use different immunogens in these different populations in order to be able to break the autotolerance towards the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen in each population.

25 By the term "down-regulation a cell-associated polypeptide antigen" is herein meant reduction in the living organism of the amount and/or activity of the antigen in question. The down-regulation can be obtained by means of several mechanisms: Of these, simple interference with the active site in  
30 the antigen by antibody binding is the most simple. However, it is also within the scope of the present invention that the antibody binding results in removal of the polypeptide by

scavenger cells (such as macrophages and other phagocytizing cells), and even more important, that cells carrying or harbouring the antigen are killed by CTLs in the animal.

The expression "effecting simultaneous presentation by a suitable APC" is intended to denote that the animal's immune system is subjected to an immunogenic challenge in a controlled manner which results in the simultaneous presentation by APCs of the epitopes in question. As will appear from the disclosure below, such challenge of the immune system can be effected in a number of ways of which the most important are vaccination with polypeptide containing "pharmaccines" (i.e. a vaccine which is administered to treat or ameliorate ongoing disease) or nucleic acid "pharmaccine" vaccination. The important result to achieve is that immune competent cells in the animal are confronted with APCs displaying the relevant epitopes in an immunologically effective manner.

The term "immunogenically effective amount" has its usual meaning in the art, i.e. an amount of an immunogen which is capable of inducing an immune response which significantly engages pathogenic agents which share immunological features with the immunogen.

When using the expression that the weak cell-associated polypeptide antigens have been subjected to a "modification" is herein meant a chemical modification of the polypeptide which constitutes the backbone of the polypeptide in question. Such a modification can e.g. be derivatization (e.g. alkylation) of certain amino acid residues in the amino acid sequence, but as will be appreciated from the disclosure below, the preferred modifications comprise changes of the primary structure of the amino acid sequence.



When discussing "tolerance" and "autotolerance" is understood that since the polypeptides which are the targets of the present inventive method are self-proteins in the population to be vaccinated or proteins which do not result in induction of an effective immune response, normal individuals in the population do not mount an immune response against the polypeptide. It cannot be excluded, though, that occasional individuals in an animal population might be able to produce antibodies against the native polypeptide antigen, e.g. as part of a autoimmune disorder. At any rate, an animal will normally only be autotolerant towards its own polypeptide antigen, but it cannot be excluded that analogues derived from other animal species or from a population having a different phenotype would also be tolerated by said animal.

15 A "foreign T-cell epitope" is a peptide which is able to bind to an MHC molecule and stimulates T-cells in an animal species. Preferred foreign epitopes are "promiscuous" epitopes, i.e. epitopes which binds to a substantial fraction of MHC class II molecules in an animal species or population. Only a very limited number of such promiscuous T-cell epitopes are known, and they will be discussed in detail below. It should be noted that in order for the immunogens which are used according to the present invention to be effective in as large a fraction of an animal population as possible, it may be necessary to 1) insert several foreign T-cell epitopes in the same analogue or 2) prepare several analogues wherein each analogue has a different promiscuous epitope inserted. It should be noted that the concept of foreign T-cell epitopes also encompasses use of cryptic T-cell epitopes, i.e. epitopes which are derived from a self-protein and which only exerts immunogenic behaviour when existing in isolated form without being part of the self-protein in question.

A "foreign T helper lymphocyte epitope" (a foreign  $T_H$  epitope) is a foreign T cell epitope which binds an MHC Class II molecule and can be presented on the surface of an antigen presenting cell (APC) bound to the MHC Class II molecule.

- 5 A "CTL" epitope is a peptide which is able to bind to an MHC class I molecule.

A "functional part" of a (bio)molecule is in the present context intended to mean the part of the molecule which is responsible for at least one of the biochemical or physiological effects exerted by the molecule. It is well-known in the art that many enzymes and other effector molecules have an active site which is responsible for the effects exerted by the molecule in question. Other parts of the molecule may serve a stabilizing or solubility enhancing purpose and can therefore be left out if these purposes are not of relevance in the context of a certain embodiment of the present invention. For instance it is possible to use certain cytokines as a modifying moiety in the analogue (cf. the detailed discussion below), and in such a case, the issue of stability may be irrelevant since the coupling to the analogue provides the stability necessary.

The term "adjuvant" has its usual meaning in the art of vaccine technology, i.e. a substance or a composition of matter which is 1) not in itself capable of mounting a specific immune response against the immunogen of the vaccine, but which is 2) nevertheless capable of enhancing the immune response against the immunogen. Or, in other words, vaccination with the adjuvant alone does not provide an immune response against the immunogen, vaccination with the immunogen may or may not give rise to an immune response against the immunogen, but the combined vaccination with immunogen and

adjuvant induces an immune response against the immunogen which is stronger than that induced by the immunogen alone.

"Targeting" of a molecule is in the present context intended to denote the situation where a molecule upon introduction in the animal will appear preferentially in certain tissue(s) or will be preferentially associated with certain cells or cell types. The effect can be accomplished in a number of ways including formulation of the molecule in composition facilitating targeting or by introduction in the molecule of groups which facilitates targeting. These issues will be discussed in detail below.

"Stimulation of the immune system" means that a substance or composition of matter exhibits a general, non-specific immunostimulatory effect. A number of adjuvants and putative adjuvants (such as certain cytokines) share the ability to stimulate the immune system. The result of using an immunostimulating agent is an increased "alertness" of the immune system meaning that simultaneous or subsequent immunization with an immunogen induces a significantly more effective immune response compared to isolated use of the immunogen

#### Preferred embodiments

In order to induce a CTL response against a cell which presents epitopes derived from the polypeptide antigen on its surface, it is normally necessary that at least one CTL epitope, when presented, is associated with an MHC Class I molecule on the surface of the APC. Furthermore it is preferred that the at least one first foreign  $T_H$  epitope, when presented, is associated with an MHC Class II molecule on the surface of the APC.

Preferred APCs presenting the epitopes are dendritic cells and macrophages, but any pinocytotic or phagocytizing APC which is capable of simultaneously presenting 1) CTL epitopes bound to MHC class I molecules and 2) T<sub>H</sub> epitopes bound to MHC class II molecules, is a preferred APC according to the invention.

According to the invention, the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is preferably selected from a tumour-associated antigens and other self-proteins which are related to pathological processes but also viral antigens and antigens derived from an intracellular parasite or bacterium will. It is well-known in the art that such pathogen-associated antigens are often relatively poor immunogens (e.g. antigens from mycobacteria such as *Mycobacterium tuberculosis* and *Mycobacterium leprae*, but also from protozoans such as *Plasmodium spp.*). It is believed that the method of the invention, apart from rendering possible the production of antibody and CTL responses against true self-protein antigens, is capable of enhancing the often insufficient immune response mounted by the organism against such intracellular antigens.

Normally, it will be advantageous to confront the immune system with a large fraction of the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide antigen which is the vaccine target. Hence, in a preferred embodiment, presentation by the APC of the CTL epitope and the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is effected by presenting the animal's immune system with at least one first analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said first analogue comprising a variation of the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said variation containing at least the CTL epitope and the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope. This is in contrast to e.g. a DNA vaccination strategy where the CTL and T<sub>H</sub> epitopes are expressed by the same cell but as parts of separate polypeptides; such a DNA vaccination strategy is also an embodiment of the invention,

but it is believed that having the two epitopes as part of the same polypeptide will normally enhance the immune response and, at any rate, the provision of only one expression product will be necessary.

- 5 In order to maximize the chances of mounting an effective immune response, it is preferred that the above-mentioned first analogue contains a substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, i.e. a fraction of the known and predicted CTL epi-  
10 topes which binds a sufficient fractions of MHC Class I molecules in a population. For instance, it is preferred that the substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes in the amino acid sequence of the analogue are recognized by at least 50% of the MHC-I haplotypes recognizing all known and  
15 predicted CTL epitopes in the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, but higher percentages are preferred, such as at least 60, at least 70, at least 80, and at least 90%. Especially preferred is the use of analogues which preserves substantially all known CTL epitopes of the cell-associated  
20 polypeptide antigen are present in the analogue, i.e. close to 100% of the known CTL epitopes. Accordingly, it is also especially preferred that substantially all predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the at least first analogue.
- 25 Methods for predicting the presence of CTL epitopes are well-known in the art, cf. e.g. Rothbard et al. EMBO J. 7:93-100 (1988).

As will be apparent from the present specification and claims it is expected that the inventive method described herein will  
30 render possible the effective induction of CTL responses against cell-associated polypeptide antigens.

In cases where the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is truly intracellular, the induction of a CTL response against cells harbouring the antigen is the only way to achieve its down-regulation by specific immunological means. However, in the case of membrane-associated antigens, it is advantageous to induce a antibody response against the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen. However, when raising a humoral immune response against a weak cell-associated antigen it is preferred to substantially restrict the antibody response to interaction with the parts of the antigen which are normally exposed to possible interaction with antibodies. Otherwise the result would most likely be the induction of an antibody response against parts of the antigen which is not normally engaging the humoral immune system, and this will in turn increase the risk of inducing cross-reactivity with antigens not related to any pathology. One elegant way of obtaining this restriction is to perform nucleic acid vaccination with an analogue of the weak cell-associated antigen, where the extracellular part thereof is either unaltered or includes a T<sub>H</sub> epitope which does not substantially alter the 3D structure of the extracellular part of the antigen. As one possible alternative, immunization can be performed with both a CTL directed immunogen and a B-cell directed immunogen where the B-cell directed immunogen is substantially incapable of effecting immunization against the intracellular part of the target antigen (the B-cell directed immunogen could e.g. lack any non-extracellular material from the antigen).

Induction of antibody responses can be achieved in a number of ways known to the person skilled in the art. For instance, the at least one first analogue may comprise a part consisting of a modification of the structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of the animal with the first analogue induces production of antibodies in the animal against the cell-asso-

ciated polypeptide antigen - this variant is as mentioned above especially suited for nucleic acid vaccination. Alternatively, the method of the invention can involve effecting presentation to the animal's immune system of an immunogeni-  
5 cally effective amount of at least one second analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen which contains such a modification. A convenient way to achieve that the modification has the desired antibody-inducing effect is to include at least one second foreign  $T_H$  epitope in the second analogue,  
10 i.e. a strategy like the one used for the first analogue.

In the cases where it is desired to also mount an effective humoral immune response, it is advantageous that the first and/or second analogue(s) comprise(s) a substantial fraction of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen's B-cell epitopes,  
15 especially a substantial fraction of such B-cell epitopes which are extracellular in the naturally occurring form of the antigen in the pertinent animal.

The above-discussed variations and modifications of the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen can take different forms.  
20 It is preferred that the variation and/or modification involves amino acid substitution and/or deletion and/or insertion and/or addition. These fundamental operations relating to the manipulation of an amino acid sequence are intended to cover both single-amino acid changes as well as operations  
25 involving stretches of amino acids (i.e. shuffling of amino acid stretches within the polypeptide antigen; this is especially interesting when the antigen is a true intracellular antigen, since only considerations concerning preservation of CTL epitopes are relevant). It will be understood, that the  
30 introduction of e.g. one single amino acid insertion or deletion may give rise to the emergence of a foreign  $T_H$  epitope in the sequence of the analogue, i.e. the emergence of an MHC Class II molecule binding sequence. However, in most situa-

tions it is preferable (and even necessary) to introduce a known foreign  $T_H$  epitope, and such an operation will require acid substitution and/or insertion (or sometimes addition in the form of either conjugation to a carrier protein or provision of a fusion polypeptide by means of molecular biology methods. It is preferred that the number of amino acid insertions, deletions, substitutions or additions is at least 2, such as 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, and 25 insertions, substitutions, additions or deletions. It is furthermore preferred that the number of amino acid substitutions is not in excess of 150, such as at most 100, at most 90, at most 80, and at most 70. It is especially preferred that the number of substitutions, insertions, deletions, or additions does not exceed 60, and in particular the number should not exceed 50 or even 40. Most preferred is a number of not more than 30.

Preferred embodiments of the invention includes modification by introducing at least one foreign immunodominant  $T_H$  epitope. It will be understood that the question of immune dominance of a T-cell epitope depends on the animal species in question. As used herein, the term "immunodominance" simply refers to epitopes which in the vaccinated individual/population gives rise to a significant immune response, but it is a well-known fact that a T-cell epitope which is immunodominant in one individual is not necessarily immunodominant in another individual of the same species, even though it may be capable of binding MHC-II molecules in the latter individual. True immune dominant  $T_H$  epitopes are those which, independent of the polypeptide wherein they form a subsequence, give rise to activation of  $T_H$  cells - in other words, some  $T_H$  epitopes have, as an intrinsic feature, the characteristic of substantially never being cryptic since they are substantially always processed by APCs and presented in the context of an MHC II molecule on the surface of the APC.



Another important point is the issue of MHC restriction of T-cell epitopes. In general, naturally occurring T-cell epitopes are MHC restricted, i.e. a certain peptides constituting a T-cell epitope will only bind effectively to a subset of MHC Class II molecules. This in turn has the effect that in most cases the use of one specific T-cell epitope will result in a vaccine component which is only effective in a fraction of the population, and depending on the size of that fraction, it can be necessary to include more T-cell epitopes in the same molecule, or alternatively prepare a multi-component vaccine wherein the components are variants of the antigen which are distinguished from each other by the nature of the T-cell epitope introduced.

If the MHC restriction of the T-cells used is completely unknown (for instance in a situation where the vaccinated animal has a poorly defined MHC composition), the fraction of the population covered by a specific vaccine composition can be determined by means of the following formula

$$f_{\text{population}} = 1 - \prod_{i=1}^n (1 - p_i) \quad (\text{II})$$

-where  $p_i$  is the frequency in the population of responders to the  $i^{\text{th}}$  foreign T-cell epitope present in the vaccine composition, and  $n$  is the total number of foreign T-cell epitopes in the vaccine composition. Thus, a vaccine composition containing 3 foreign T-cell epitopes having response frequencies in the population of 0.8, 0.7, and 0.6, respectively, would give

$$1 - 0.2 \times 0.3 \times 0.4 = 0.976$$

-i.e. 97.6 percent of the population will statistically mount an MHC-II mediated response to the vaccine.

The above formula does not apply in situations where a more or less precise MHC restriction pattern of the peptides used is known. If, for instance a certain peptide only binds the human MHC-II molecules encoded by HLA-DR alleles DR1, DR3, DR5, and DR7, then the use of this peptide together with another peptide which binds the remaining MHC-II molecules encoded by HLA-DR alleles will accomplish 100% coverage in the population in question. Likewise, if the second peptide only binds DR3 and DR5, the addition of this peptide will not increase the coverage at all. If one bases the calculation of population response purely on MHC restriction of T-cell epitopes in the vaccine, the fraction of the population covered by a specific vaccine composition can be determined by means of the following formula:

$$f_{\text{population}} = 1 - \prod_{j=1}^3 (1 - \varphi_j)^2 \quad (\text{III})$$

-wherein  $\varphi_j$  is the sum of frequencies in the population of allelic haplotypes encoding MHC molecules which bind any one of the T-cell epitopes in the vaccine and which belong to the  $j^{\text{th}}$  of the 3 known HLA loci (DP, DR and DQ); in practice, it is first determined which MHC molecules will recognize each T-cell epitope in the vaccine and thereafter these are listed by type (DP, DR and DQ) - then, the individual frequencies of the different listed allelic haplotypes are summed for each type, thereby yielding  $\varphi_1$ ,  $\varphi_2$ , and  $\varphi_3$ .

It may occur that the value  $p_i$  in formula II exceeds the corresponding theoretical value  $\pi_i$ :

$$\pi_i = 1 - \prod_{j=1}^3 (1 - v_j)^2 \quad (\text{IV})$$

-wherein  $v_j$  is the sum of frequencies in the population of allelic haplotype encoding MHC molecules which bind the  $i^{\text{th}}$  T-cell epitope in the vaccine and which belong to the  $j^{\text{th}}$  of the 3 known HLA loci (DP, DR and DQ). This means that in  $1-\pi_i$  of the population is a frequency of responders of  $f_{\text{residual}_i} = (p_i - \pi_i)/(1-\pi_i)$ . Therefore, formula III can be adjusted so as to yield formula V:

$$f_{\text{population}} = 1 - \prod_{j=1}^3 (1 - \varphi_j)^2 + \left( 1 - \prod_{i=1}^n (1 - f_{\text{residual}_i}) \right) \quad (\text{V})$$

-where the term  $1-f_{\text{residual}_i}$  is set to zero if negative. It should be noted that formula V requires that all epitopes have been haplotype mapped against identical sets of haplotypes.

Therefore, when selecting T-cell epitopes to be introduced in the analogue, it is important to include all knowledge of the epitopes which is available: 1) The frequency of responders in the population to each epitope, 2) MHC restriction data, and 3) frequency in the population of the relevant haplotypes.

There exist a number of naturally occurring "promiscuous" T-cell epitopes which are active in a large proportion of individuals of an animal species or an animal population and these are preferably introduced in the vaccine thereby reducing the need for a very large number of different analogues in the same vaccine.

The promiscuous epitope can according to the invention be a naturally occurring human T-cell epitope such as epitopes from tetanus toxoid (e.g. the P2 and P30 epitopes), diphtheria toxoid, Influenza virus hemagglutinin (HA), and P. falciparum CS antigen.

Over the years a number of other promiscuous T-cell epitopes have been identified. Especially peptides capable of binding a large proportion of HLA-DR molecules encoded by the different HLA-DR alleles have been identified and these are all possible  
5 T-cell epitopes to be introduced in analogues used according to the present invention. Cf. also the epitopes discussed in the following references which are hereby all incorporated by reference herein: WO 98/23635 (Frazer IH et al., assigned to The University of Queensland); Southwood S et. al, 1998, J.  
10 Immunol. **160**: 3363-3373; Sinigaglia F et al., 1988, Nature **336**: 778-780; Rammensee HG et al., 1995, Immunogenetics **41**: 4178-228; Chicz FM et al., 1993, J. Exp. Med **178**: 27-47; Hammer J et al., 1993, Cell **74**: 197-203; and Falk K et al., 1994, Immunogenetics **39**: 230-242. The latter reference also deals  
15 with HLA-DQ and -DP ligands. All epitopes listed in these 5 references are relevant as candidate natural epitopes to be used in the present invention, as are epitopes which share common motifs with these.

Alternatively, the epitope can be any artificial T-cell epitope which is capable of binding a large proportion of haplotypes. In this context the pan DR epitope peptides ("PADRE") described in WO 95/07707 and in the corresponding paper Alexander J et al., 1994, Immunity **1**: 751-761 (both disclosures are incorporated by reference herein) are interesting candi-  
25 dates for epitopes to be used according to the present invention. It should be noted that the most effective PADRE peptides disclosed in these papers carry D-amino acids in the C- and N-termini in order to improve stability when administered. However, the present invention primarily aims at incorporating  
30 the relevant epitopes as part of the modified antigen which should then subsequently be broken down enzymatically inside the lysosomal compartment of APCs to allow subsequent presentation in the context of an MHC-II molecule and therefore it

is not expedient to incorporate D-amino acids in the epitopes used in the present invention.

One especially preferred PADRE peptide is the one having the amino acid sequence AKFVAAWTLKAAA or an immunologically effective subsequence thereof. This, and other epitopes having the same lack of MHC restriction are preferred T-cell epitopes which should be present in the analogues used in the inventive method. Such super-promiscuous epitopes will allow for the most simple embodiments of the invention wherein only one single analogue is presented to the vaccinated animal's immune system.

The nature of the above-discussed variation/modification preferably comprises that

- at least one first moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said first moiety effecting targeting of the analogue to an antigen presenting cell (APC), and/or
- at least one second moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said second moiety stimulating the immune system, and/or
- at least one third moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said third moiety optimizing presentation of the analogue to the immune system.

The functional and structural features relating these first, second and third moieties will be discussed in the following:

They can be present in the form of side groups attached covalently or non-covalently to suitable chemical groups in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen or a subsequence thereof. This is to mean that stretches of amino acid residues derived from the polypeptide antigen are derivatized without altering the primary amino acid sequence,

or at least without introducing changes in the peptide bonds between the individual amino acids in the chain.

The moieties can also be in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen. In this connection it should be mentioned that both possibilities include the option of conjugating the amino acid sequence to a carrier, cf. the discussion of these below. In other words, in the present context the term "fusion protein" is not merely restricted to a fusion construct prepared by means of expression of a DNA fragment encoding the construct but also to a conjugate between two proteins which are joined by means of a peptide bond in a subsequent chemical reaction.

As mentioned above, the analogue can also include the introduction of a first moiety which targets the analogue to an APC or a B-lymphocyte. For instance, the first moiety can be a specific binding partner for a B-lymphocyte specific surface antigen or for an APC specific surface antigen. Many such specific surface antigens are known in the art. For instance, the moiety can be a carbohydrate for which there is a receptor on the B-lymphocyte or the APC (e.g. mannan or mannose). Alternatively, the second moiety can be a hapten. Also an antibody fragment which specifically recognizes a surface molecule on APCs or lymphocytes can be used as a first moiety (the surface molecule can e.g. be an Fc $\gamma$  receptor of macrophages and monocytes, such as Fc $\gamma$ RI or, alternatively any other specific surface marker such as CD40 or CTLA-4). It should be noted that all these exemplary targeting molecules can be used as part of an adjuvant, cf. below. CD40 ligand, antibodies against CD40, or variants thereof which bind CD40 will target the analogue to dendritic cells. At the same time, recent results have shown that the interaction with the CD40 molecule renders the T<sub>H</sub> cells unessential for obtaining a CTL

response. Hence, it is contemplated that the general use of CD40 binding molecules as the first moiety (or as adjuvants, cf. below) will enhance the CTL response considerably; in fact, the use of such CD40 binding molecules as adjuvants and  
5 "first moieties" in the meaning of the present invention is believed to be inventive in its own right.

As an alternative or supplement to targeting the analogue to a certain cell type in order to achieve an enhanced immune response, it is possible to increase the level of responsive-  
10 ness of the immune system by including the above-mentioned second moiety which stimulates the immune system. Typical examples of such second moieties are cytokines, heat-shock proteins, and hormones, as well as effective parts thereof.

Suitable cytokines to be used according to the invention are  
15 those which will normally also function as adjuvants in a vaccine composition, e.g. interferon  $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), Flt3 ligand (Flt3L), interleukin 1 (IL-1), interleukin 2 (IL-2), interleukin 4 (IL-4), interleukin 6 (IL-6), interleukin 12 (IL-12), interleukin 13 (IL-13), interleukin 15 (IL-15), and  
20 granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF); alternatively, the functional part of the cytokine molecule may suffice as the second moiety. With respect to the use of such cytokines as adjuvant substances, cf. the discussion below.

25 Alternatively, the second moiety can be a toxin, such as listeriolysin (LLO), lipid A and heat-labile enterotoxin. Also, a number of mycobacterial derivatives such as MDP (mureamyl dipeptide), CFA (complete Freund's adjuvant) and the trehalose diesters TDM and TDE are interesting possibilities.

According to the invention, suitable heat shock proteins used as the second moiety can be HSP70, HSP90, HSC70, GRP94, and calreticulin (CRT).

Also the possibility of introducing a third moiety which  
5 enhances the presentation of the analogue to the immune system is an important embodiment of the invention. The art has shown several examples of this principle. For instance, it is known that the palmitoyl lipidation anchor in the *Borrelia burg-*  
10 *dorferi* protein OspA can be utilised so as to provide self-  
adjuvating polypeptides (cf. e.g. WO 96/40718). It seems that the lipidated proteins form up micelle-like structures with a core consisting of the lipidation anchor parts of the polypep-  
tides and the remaining parts of the molecule protruding  
therefrom, resulting in multiple presentations of the anti-  
15 genic determinants. Hence, the use of this and related ap-  
proaches using different lipidation anchors (e.g. a myristyl group, a farnesyl group, a geranyl-geranyl group, a GPI-an-  
chor, and an N-acyl diglyceride group) are preferred embodi-  
ments of the invention, especially since the provision of such  
20 a lipidation anchor in a recombinantly produced protein is  
fairly straightforward and merely requires use of e.g. a  
naturally occurring signal sequence as a fusion partner for  
the analogue. Another possibility is use of the C3d fragment  
of complement factor C3 or C3 itself (cf. Dempsey et al.,  
25 1996, Science 271, 348-350 and Lou & Kohler, 1998, Nature  
Biotechnology 16, 458-462).

It is important to note that when attempting to use the method  
of the invention against e.g. membrane bound polypeptide  
antigens which are exposed to the extracellular compartment,  
30 it is most preferred that the first and/or second analogue(s)  
has/have substantially the overall tertiary structure of the  
cell-associated polypeptide antigen. In the present specifica-  
tion and claims this is intended to mean that the overall



tertiary structure of the part of the polypeptide antigen which is extracellularly exposed is preserved, since, as mentioned above, the tertiary structure of the obligate intracellular polypeptides do not engage the humeral immune system. In fact, as part of the vaccination strategy it is often desired to avoid exposure to the extracellular compartment of putative B-cell epitopes derived from intracellular part of the polypeptide antigens; in this way, potentially adverse effects caused by cross-reactivity with other antigens can be minimized.

For the purposes of the present invention, it is however sufficient if the variation/modification (be it an insertion, addition, deletion or substitution) gives rise to a foreign T-cell epitope and at the same time preserves a substantial number of the CTL epitopes in the polypeptide antigen (and sometimes also a substantial number of B-cell epitopes).

The following formula describes the constructs generally covered by the invention:

$$(\text{MOD}_1)_{s1} (\text{PAG}_{e1})_{n1} (\text{MOD}_2)_{s2} (\text{PAG}_{e2})_{n2} \dots (\text{MOD}_x)_{sx} (\text{PAG}_{ex})_{nx} \quad (\text{I})$$

-where  $\text{PAG}_{e1}$ - $\text{PAG}_{ex}$  are  $x$  CTL and/or B-Cell epitope containing subsequences of the relevant polypeptide antigen which independently are identical or non-identical and which may contain or not contain foreign side groups,  $x$  is an integer  $\geq 3$ ,  $n1$ - $nx$  are  $x$  integers  $\geq 0$  (at least one is  $\geq 1$ ),  $\text{MOD}_1$ - $\text{MOD}_x$  are  $x$  modifications introduced between the preserved epitopes, and  $s1$ - $sx$  are  $x$  integers  $\geq 0$  (at least one is  $\geq 1$  if no side groups are introduced in the sequences). Thus, given the general functional restraints on the immunogenicity of the constructs, the invention allows for all kinds of permutations of the original antigen sequence, and all kinds of modifications therein. Thus, included in the invention are analogues

obtained by omission of parts of the polypeptide antigen sequence which e.g. exhibit adverse effects in vivo or omission of parts which are normally intracellular and thus could give rise to undesired immunological reactions, cf. the detailed discussion below.

A further elaboration of the above principle include use of CTL and/or B-cell epitopes from more than one pathology-related antigen. For instance, there are several cancer related antigens that exert their oncogenic effects when they are in a mutated form only - examples are mutated K-ras and P53 which both are crucial proteins in normal cell cycle regulation and which both are expression products in most normal cells. In some cases, CTLs have been shown to recognise mutated peptides from these antigens. It is therefore important that the immune system responds to the mutated peptide only, and not to the unmutated parts, if antigen specific immunotherapy is instigated.

We have devised a strategy whereby sequences of 8-25 amino acids of such disease-related proteins could be used as further epitopes in an AutoVac construct - in preferred embodiments, the introduced epitopes would at the same time provide for the emergence of  $T_H$  epitopes in the final construct, cf. the discussion above. The epitopes used for this purpose would be those which comprise the mutated region of the disease-related protein. By using such an approach, it would be possible to generate CTLs (and possibly antibodies, where applicable) against only the mutated form of the disease-related antigen. In the cases where the disease-related antigen provides for the emergence of a  $T_H$  epitope, the use of a truly foreign  $T_H$  epitope could be completely omitted. An embodiment of this principle could e.g. be vaccination with a nucleic acid vaccine which encode an analogue of a polypeptide antigen (e.g. Her2 or PSM) wherein has been introduced at least one  $T_H$

epitope and at least one peptide derived from another disease-related antigen (e.g. a peptide from the mutated part of an oncogenic protein). In a preferred embodiment, the at least one T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced as a consequence of the introduction of the peptide.

It is furthermore preferred that the variation and/or modification includes duplication, when applicable, of the at least one B-cell epitope, or of at least one CTL epitope of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen. This strategy will give the result that multiple copies of preferred epitopic regions are presented to the immune system and thus maximizing the probability of an effective immune response. Hence, this embodiment of the invention utilises multiple presentations of epitopes derived from the polypeptide antigen (i.e. formula I wherein at least one B-cell epitope is present in two positions).

This effect can be achieved in various ways, e.g. by simply preparing fusion polypeptides comprising the structure (PAG)<sub>m</sub>, where m is an integer  $\geq 2$  and then introduce the modifications discussed herein in at least one of the polypeptide antigen sequences.

An alternative embodiment of the invention which also results in the preferred presentation of multiple (e.g. at least 2) copies of the important epitopic regions of the antigen to the immune system is the covalent coupling of the antigen, subsequence or variants thereof to certain molecules. For instance, polymers can be used, e.g. carbohydrates such as dextran, cf. e.g. Lees A et al., 1994, Vaccine 12: 1160-1166; Lees A et al., 1990, J Immunol. 145: 3594-3600, but also mannose and mannan are useful alternatives. Integral membrane proteins from e.g. *E. coli* and other bacteria are also useful conjugation partners. The traditional carrier molecules such as

keyhole limpet haemocyanin (KLH), tetanus toxoid, diphtheria toxoid, and bovine serum albumin (BSA) are also preferred and useful conjugation partners.

Maintenance of the sometimes advantageous substantial fraction  
5 of B-cell epitopes or even the overall tertiary structure of a protein which is subjected to modification as described herein can be achieved in several ways. One is simply to prepare a polyclonal antiserum directed against the polypeptide antigen (e.g. an antiserum prepared in a rabbit) and thereafter use  
10 this antiserum as a test reagent (e.g. in a competitive ELISA) against the modified proteins which are produced. Modified versions (analogues) which react to the same extent with the antiserum as does the polypeptide antigen must be regarded as having the same overall tertiary structure as the polypeptide  
15 antigen whereas analogues exhibiting a limited (but still significant and specific) reactivity with such an antiserum are regarded as having maintained a substantial fraction of the original B-cell epitopes.

Alternatively, a selection of monoclonal antibodies reactive  
20 with distinct epitopes on the polypeptide antigen can be prepared and used as a test panel. This approach has the advantage of allowing 1) an epitope mapping of the polypeptide antigen in question and 2) a mapping of the epitopes which are maintained in the analogues prepared.

25 Of course, a third approach would be to resolve the 3-dimensional structure of the polypeptide antigen or of a biologically active truncate thereof (cf. above) and compare this to the resolved three-dimensional structure of the analogues prepared. Three-dimensional structure can be resolved by the  
30 aid of X-ray diffraction studies and NMR-spectroscopy. Further information relating to the tertiary structure can to some extent be obtained from circular dichroism studies which have

the advantage of merely requiring the polypeptide in pure form (whereas X-ray diffraction requires the provision of crystallized polypeptide and NMR requires the provision of isotopic variants of the polypeptide) in order to provide useful information about the tertiary structure of a given molecule.

However, ultimately X-ray diffraction and/or NMR are necessary to obtain conclusive data since circular dichroism can only provide indirect evidence of correct 3-dimensional structure via information of secondary structure elements.

10 In essence there are at present three feasible ways of obtaining the presentation of the relevant epitopes to the immune system: Traditional sub-unit vaccination with polypeptide antigens, administration of a genetically modified live vaccine, and nucleic acid vaccination. These three possibilities  
15 will be discussed separately in the following:

#### Polypeptide vaccination

This entails administration to the animal in question of an immunogenically effective amount of the at least one first analogue, and, when relevant, administration of an immunologically effective amount of the at least one second analogue.  
20 Preferably, the at least one first and/or second analogue(s) is/are formulated together with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier and/or vehicle and, optionally an adjuvant.

25 When effecting presentation of the analogue to an animal's immune system by means of administration thereof to the animal, the formulation of the polypeptide follows the principles generally acknowledged in the art.

Preparation of vaccines which contain peptide sequences as  
30 active ingredients is generally well understood in the art, as

exemplified by US Patents 4,608,251; 4,601,903; 4,599,231; 4,599,230; 4,596,792; and 4,578,770, all incorporated herein by reference. Typically, such vaccines are prepared as injectables either as liquid solutions or suspensions; solid forms  
5 suitable for solution in, or suspension in, liquid prior to injection may also be prepared. The preparation may also be emulsified. The active immunogenic ingredient is often mixed with excipients which are pharmaceutically acceptable and compatible with the active ingredient. Suitable excipients  
10 are, for example, water, saline, dextrose, glycerol, ethanol, or the like, and combinations thereof. In addition, if desired, the vaccine may contain minor amounts of auxiliary substances such as wetting or emulsifying agents, pH buffering agents, or adjuvants which enhance the effectiveness of the  
15 vaccines; cf. the detailed discussion of adjuvants below.

The vaccines are conventionally administered parenterally, by injection, for example, either subcutaneously, intradermally, subdermally or intramuscularly. Additional formulations which are suitable for other modes of administration include suppos-  
20 itories and, in some cases, oral, buccal, sublingual, intraperitoneal, intravaginal, anal and intracranial formulations. For suppositories, traditional binders and carriers may include, for example, polyalkylene glycols or triglycerides; such suppositories may be formed from mixtures containing the  
25 active ingredient in the range of 0.5% to 10%, preferably 1-2%. Oral formulations include such normally employed excipients as, for example, pharmaceutical grades of mannitol, lactose, starch, magnesium stearate, sodium saccharine, cellulose, magnesium carbonate, and the like. These compositions  
30 take the form of solutions, suspensions, tablets, pills, capsules, sustained release formulations or powders and contain 10-95% of active ingredient, preferably 25-70%. For oral formulations, cholera toxin is an interesting formulation partner (and also a possible conjugation partner).

The polypeptides may be formulated into the vaccine as neutral or salt forms. Pharmaceutically acceptable salts include acid addition salts (formed with the free amino groups of the peptide) and which are formed with inorganic acids such as, 5 for example, hydrochloric or phosphoric acids, or such organic acids as acetic, oxalic, tartaric, mandelic, and the like. Salts formed with the free carboxyl groups may also be derived from inorganic bases such as, for example, sodium, potassium, ammonium, calcium, or ferric hydroxides, and such organic 10 bases as isopropylamine, trimethylamine, 2-ethylamino ethanol, histidine, procaine, and the like.

The vaccines are administered in a manner compatible with the dosage formulation, and in such amount as will be therapeutically effective and immunogenic. The quantity to be administered 15 depends on the subject to be treated, including, e.g., the capacity of the individual's immune system to mount an immune response, and the degree of protection desired. Suitable dosage ranges are of the order of several hundred micrograms active ingredient per vaccination with a preferred range 20 from about 0.1 µg to 2000 µg (even though higher amounts in the 1-10 mg range are contemplated), such as in the range from about 0.5 µg to 1000 µg, preferably in the range from 1 µg to 500 µg and especially in the range from about 10 µg to 100 µg. Suitable regimens for initial administration and booster shots 25 are also variable but are typified by an initial administration followed by subsequent inoculations or other administrations.

The manner of application may be varied widely. Any of the conventional methods for administration of a vaccine are 30 applicable. These include oral application on a solid physiologically acceptable base or in a physiologically acceptable dispersion, parenterally, by injection or the like. The dosage of the vaccine will depend on the route of administration and

will vary according to the age of the person to be vaccinated and the formulation of the antigen.

Some of the polypeptides of the vaccine are sufficiently immunogenic in a vaccine, but for some of the others the  
5 immune response will be enhanced if the vaccine further comprises an adjuvant substance. It is especially preferred to use an adjuvant which can be demonstrated to facilitate breaking of the autotolerance to autoantigens.

Various methods of achieving adjuvant effect for the vaccine  
10 are known. General principles and methods are detailed in "The Theory and Practical Application of Adjuvants", 1995, Duncan E.S. Stewart-Tull (ed.), John Wiley & Sons Ltd, ISBN 0-471-95170-6, and also in "Vaccines: New Generationn Immunological Adjuvants", 1995, Gregoriadis G et al. (eds.), Plenum Press,  
15 New York, ISBN 0-306-45283-9, both of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein.

Preferred adjuvants facilitate uptake of the vaccine molecules by APCs, such as dendritic cells, and activate these. Non-limiting examples are selected from the group consisting of an  
20 immune targeting adjuvant; an immune modulating adjuvant such as a toxin, a cytokine, and a mycobacterial derivative; an oil formulation; a polymer; a micelle forming adjuvant; a saponin; an immunostimulating complex matrix (ISCOM matrix); a particle; DDA; aluminium adjuvants; DNA adjuvants;  $\gamma$ -inulin; and  
25 an encapsulating adjuvant. In general it should be noted that the disclosures above which relate to compounds and agents useful as first, second and third moieties in the analogues also refer *mutatis mutandis* to their use in the adjuvant of a vaccine of the invention.

30 The application of adjuvants include use of agents such as aluminum hydroxide or phosphate (alum), commonly used as 0.05



to 0.1 percent solution in buffered saline, admixture with synthetic polymers of sugars (e.g. Carbopol®) used as 0.25 percent solution, aggregation of the protein in the vaccine by heat treatment with temperatures ranging between 70° to 101°C for 30 second to 2 minute periods respectively and also aggregation by means of cross-linking agents are possible. Aggregation by reactivation with pepsin treated antibodies (Fab fragments) to albumin, mixture with bacterial cells such as *C. parvum* or endotoxins or lipopolysaccharide components of gram-negative bacteria, emulsion in physiologically acceptable oil vehicles such as mannide mono-oleate (Aracel A) or emulsion with 20 percent solution of a perfluorocarbon (Fluosol-DA) used as a block substitute may also be employed. Admixture with oils such as squalene and IFA is also preferred.

15 According to the invention DDA (dimethyldioctadecylammonium bromide) is an interesting candidate for an adjuvant as is DNA and  $\gamma$ -inulin, but also Freund's complete and incomplete adjuvants as well as quillaja saponins such as QuilA and QS21 are interesting. Further possibilities are monophosphoryl lipid A 20 (MPL), and the above mentioned C3 and C3d.

Liposome formulations are also known to confer adjuvant effects, and therefore liposome adjuvants are preferred according to the invention.

Also immunostimulating complex matrix type (ISCOM® matrix) 25 adjuvants are preferred choices according to the invention, especially since it has been shown that this type of adjuvants are capable of up-regulating MHC Class II expression by APCs. An ISCOM® matrix consists of (optionally fractionated) saponins (triterpenoids) from *Quillaja saponaria*, cholesterol, and 30 phospholipid. When admixed with the immunogenic protein, the resulting particulate formulation is what is known as an ISCOM particle where the saponin constitutes 60-70% w/w, the choles-

terol and phospholipid 10-15% w/w, and the protein 10-15% w/w. Details relating to composition and use of immunostimulating complexes can e.g. be found in the above-mentioned text-books dealing with adjuvants, but also Morein B et al., 1995, Clin. Immunother. 3: 461-475 as well as Barr IG and Mitchell GF, 1996, Immunol. and Cell Biol. 74: 3-25 (both incorporated by reference herein) provide useful instructions for the preparation of complete immunostimulating complexes.

Another highly interesting (and thus, preferred) possibility of achieving adjuvant effect is to employ the technique described in Gosselin et al., 1992 (which is hereby incorporated by reference herein). In brief, the presentation of a relevant antigen such as an antigen of the present invention can be enhanced by conjugating the antigen to antibodies (or antigen binding antibody fragments) against the Fc $\gamma$  receptors on monocytes/macrophages. Especially conjugates between antigen and anti-Fc $\gamma$ RI have been demonstrated to enhance immunogenicity for the purposes of vaccination.

Other possibilities involve the use of the targeting and immune modulating substances (i.e. cytokines) mentioned above as candidates for the first and second moieties in the modified analogues. In this connection, also synthetic inducers of cytokines like poly I:C are possibilities.

Suitable mycobacterial derivatives are selected from the group consisting of muramyl dipeptide, complete Freund's adjuvant, RIBI, and a diester of trehalose such as TDM and TDE.

Suitable immune targeting adjuvants are selected from the group consisting of CD40 ligand and CD40 antibodies or specifically binding fragments thereof (cf. the discussion above), mannose, a Fab fragment, and CTLA-4.

Suitable polymer adjuvants are selected from the group consisting of a carbohydrate such as dextran, PEG, starch, mannan, and mannose; a plastic polymer; and latex such as latex beads.

5 Yet another interesting way of modulating an immune response is to include the immunogen (optionally together with adjuvants and pharmaceutically acceptable carriers and vehicles) in a "virtual lymph node" (VLN) (a proprietary medical device developed by ImmunoTherapy, Inc., 360 Lexington Avenue, New  
10 York, NY 10017-6501). The VLN (a thin tubular device) mimics the structure and function of a lymph node. Insertion of a VLN under the skin creates a site of sterile inflammation with an upsurge of cytokines and chemokines. T- and B-cells as well as APCs rapidly respond to the danger signals, home to the in-  
15 flamed site and accumulate inside the porous matrix of the VLN. It has been shown that the necessary antigen dose required to mount an immune response to an antigen is reduced when using the VLN and that immune protection conferred by vaccination using a VLN surpassed conventional immunization  
20 using Ribi as an adjuvant. The technology is *i.a.* described briefly in Gelber C et al., 1998, "Elicitation of Robust Cellular and Humoral Immune Responses to Small Amounts of Immunogens Using a Novel Medical Device Designated the Virtual Lymph Node", in: "From the Laboratory to the Clinic, Book of  
25 Abstracts, October 12<sup>th</sup> - 15<sup>th</sup> 1998, Seascape Resort, Aptos, California".

Recent findings have demonstrated that the co-administration of H2 agonists enhances the in-tumour survival of Natural Killer Cells and CTLs. Hence, it is also contemplated to  
30 include H2 agonists as adjuvants in the methods of the invention.

It is expected that the vaccine should be administered at least once a year, such as at least 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 12 times a year. More specifically, 1-12 times per year is expected, such as 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, or 12 times  
5 a year to an individual in need thereof. It has previously been shown that the memory immunity induced by the use of the preferred autovaccines according to the invention is not permanent, and therefor the immune system needs to be periodically challenged with the analogues.

10 Due to genetic variation, different individuals may react with immune responses of varying strength to the same polypeptide. Therefore, the vaccine according to the invention may comprise several different polypeptides in order to increase the immune response, cf. also the discussion above concerning the choice  
15 of foreign T-cell epitope introductions. The vaccine may comprise two or more polypeptides, where all of the polypeptides are as defined above.

The vaccine may consequently comprise 3-20 different modified or unmodified polypeptides, such as 3-10 different polypep-  
20 tides. However, normally the number of peptides will be sought kept to a minimum such as 1 or 2 peptides.

#### Live vaccines

The second alternative for effecting presentation to the immune system is the use of live vaccine technology. In live  
25 vaccination, presentation to the immune system is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism which has been transformed with a nucleic acid fragment encoding the necessary epitopic regions or a complete 1<sup>st</sup> and/or 2<sup>nd</sup> analogue. Alternatively, the microorganism is transformed with  
30 a vector incorporating such a nucleic acid fragment. The non-pathogenic microorganism can be any suitable attenuated bacte-

rial strain (attenuated by means of passaging or by means of removal of pathogenic expression products by recombinant DNA technology), e.g. *Mycobacterium bovis* BCG., non-pathogenic *Streptococcus* spp., *E. coli*, *Salmonella* spp., *Vibrio cholerae*,  
5 *Shigella*, etc. Reviews dealing with preparation of state-of-the-art live vaccines can e.g. be found in Saliou P, 1995, Rev. Prat. 45: 1492-1496 and Walker PD, 1992, Vaccine 10: 977-990, both incorporated by reference herein. For details about the nucleic acid fragments and vectors used in such live  
10 vaccines, cf. the discussion below.

As for the polypeptide vaccine, the T<sub>H</sub> epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties can, if present, be in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

15 As an alternative to bacterial live vaccines, the nucleic acid fragment of the invention discussed below can be incorporated in a non-virulent viral vaccine vector. One possibility is a pox virus such as vaccinia, MVA (modified Vaccinia virus), canary pox, avi-pox, and chicken pox etc. Alternatively, a  
20 herpes simplex virus variant can be used.

Normally, the non-pathogenic microorganism or virus is administered only once to the animal, but in certain cases it may be necessary to administer the microorganism more than once in a lifetime.

25 Also, the microorganism can be transformed with nucleic acid(s) containing regions encoding the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and/or 3<sup>rd</sup> moieties, e.g. in the form of the immunomodulating substances described above such as the cytokines discussed as useful adjuvants. A preferred version of this embodiment encompasses  
30 having the coding region for the analogue and the coding region for the immunomodulator in different open reading

frames or at least under the control of different promoters. Thereby it is avoided that the analogue or epitopes are produced as fusion partners to the immunomodulator. Alternatively, two distinct nucleotide fragments can be used as  
5 transforming agents.

#### Nucleic acid vaccination

As an alternative to classic administration of a peptide-based vaccine, the technology of nucleic acid vaccination (also known as "nucleic acid immunisation", "genetic immunisation",  
10 "gene immunisation" and "DNA vaccination") offers a number of attractive features.

First, in contrast to the traditional vaccine approach, nucleic acid vaccination does not require resource consuming large-scale production of the immunogenic agent (e.g. in the  
15 form of industrial scale fermentation of microorganisms producing the analogues necessary in polypeptide vaccination). Furthermore, there is no need to devise purification and refolding schemes for the immunogen. And finally, since nucleic acid vaccination relies on the biochemical apparatus of  
20 the vaccinated individual in order to produce the expression product of the nucleic acid introduced, the optimum posttranslational processing of the expression product is expected to occur; this is especially important in the case of autovaccination, since, as mentioned above, a significant  
25 fraction of the original B-cell epitopes should be preserved in the analogues derived from extracellularly exposed polypeptide sequences, and since B-cell epitopes in principle can be constituted by parts of any (bio)molecule (e.g. carbohydrate, lipid, protein etc.). Therefore, native glycosylation and  
30 lipidation patterns of the immunogen may very well be of importance for the overall immunogenicity and this is best ensured by having the host producing the immunogen.

Hence, an important embodiment of the method of the invention involves that presentation is effected by *in vivo* introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and/or the at least one B-cell epitope, and the at least one first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope (an alternative encompasses administration of at least 2 distinct nucleic acid fragments, where one encodes the at least one CTL epitope and the other encodes the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope). Preferably, this is done by using a nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the above-discussed first analogue. If the first analogue is equipped with the above-detailed T<sub>H</sub> epitopes and/or first and/or second and/or third moieties, these are then present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the fusion construct being encoded by the nucleic acid fragment.

As for the traditional vaccination approach, the nucleic acid vaccination can be combined with *in vivo* introduction, into the APC, of at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the second analogue. The considerations pertaining to 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> moieties and T<sub>H</sub> epitopes apply also here.

In this embodiment, the introduced nucleic acid is preferably DNA which can be in the form of naked DNA, DNA formulated with charged or uncharged lipids, DNA formulated in liposomes, DNA included in a viral vector, DNA formulated with a transfection-facilitating protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with Calcium precipitating agents, DNA coupled to an inert carrier molecule, and DNA formulated with an adjuvant. In this context it is noted that practically all considerations pertaining to the use of adjuvants in traditional vaccine formulation apply for the formulation of DNA vaccines. Hence, all disclosures herein which relate to use of adjuvants in the

context of polypeptide based vaccines apply *mutatis mutandis* to their use in nucleic acid vaccination technology. The same holds true for other considerations relating to formulation and mode and route of administration and, hence, also these  
5 considerations discussed above in connection with a traditional vaccine apply *mutatis mutandis* to their use in nucleic acid vaccination technology.

One especially preferred type of formulation of nucleic acid vaccines are microparticles containing the DNA. Suitable  
10 microparticles are e.g. described in WO 98/31398.

Furthermore, the nucleic acid(s) used as an immunization agent can contain regions encoding the 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> and/or 3<sup>rd</sup> moieties, e.g. in the form of the immunomodulating substances described above such as the cytokines discussed as useful adjuvants. A  
15 preferred version of this embodiment encompasses having the coding region for the analogue and the coding region for the immunomodulator in different open reading frames or at least under the control of different promoters. Thereby it is avoided that the analogue or epitope is produced as a fusion part-  
20 ner to the immunomodulator. Alternatively, two distinct nucleotide fragments can be used, but this is less preferred because of the advantage of ensured co-expression when having both coding regions included in the same molecule.

Under normal circumstances, the nucleic acid of the vaccine is  
25 introduced in the form of a vector wherein expression is under control of a viral promoter. For more detailed discussions of vectors according to the invention, cf. the discussion below. Also, detailed disclosures relating to the formulation and use of nucleic acid vaccines are available, cf. Donnelly JJ et al,  
30 1997, Annu. Rev. Immunol. 15: 617-648 and Donnelly JJ et al., 1997, Life Sciences 60: 163-172. Both of these references are incorporated by reference herein.



An important part of the invention pertains to a novel method for selecting an appropriate immunogenic analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in an animal, said immunogenic analogue being  
5 capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen. This method comprises the steps of

- a) identifying at least one subsequence of the amino acid  
10 sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, where said subsequence does not contain known or predicted CTL epitopes,
- b) preparing at least one putatively immunogenic analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen by introducing,  
15 in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, at least one  $T_H$  epitope foreign to the animal in a position within the at least one subsequence identified in step a), and
- c) selecting the/those analogues prepared in step b) which  
20 are verifiably capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal.

Alternatively, the above selection method involves the preparation of a nucleic acid fragment for nucleic acid vaccination purposes. In that situation, it is required that the encoded  
25 peptide includes at least one  $T_H$  epitope.

When the analogue is derived from an antigen which is exposed to the extracellular phase, it is preferred that the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain cysteine residues, or, alternatively, that the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in  
30 step b) does not substantially alter the pattern of cysteine residues. This approach facilitates the preservation of spatial B-cell epitopes in the resulting construct which are

similar to the B-cell epitopes in the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

For the same reasons it is preferred that the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain known or predicted glycosylation sites, or, alternatively, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the glycosylation pattern.

Certain of the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigens exert undesired effects by having a pathophysiological role. It is desired that these effects are not exerted by the vaccination constructs, and therefore it is preferred that the subsequence identified in step a) contributes significantly to a pathophysiological effect exerted by the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and that the introduction in step b) of the foreign  $T_H$  epitope reduces or abolishes said pathophysiological effect. An example of this approach is to remove the active site in an enzyme, hormone or cytokine and exchange this with the foreign  $T_H$  epitope.

Another important consideration pertains to the question of immunological cross-reactivity of the vaccine's polypeptide product with other self-proteins which are not related to a pathology. Such cross-reactivity should preferably be avoided and hence an important embodiment of this method of the invention is one where the subsequence identified in step a) is homologous to an amino acid sequence of a different protein antigen of the animal, and where the introduction of the  $T_H$  epitope in step b) substantially removes the homology.

Related to this embodiment is an embodiment where any amino acid sequences which 1) are not normally exposed to the extracellular phase and 2) which may constitute B-cell epitopes of the weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigen, are

not preserved in the analogue. This can be achieved by exchanging such amino acid sequences with T<sub>H</sub> epitopes which do not constitute B-cell epitopes, by completely removing them, or by partly removing them.

- 5 On the other hand, it is preferred that any "true" B-cell epitopes of the weak cell-associated polypeptide antigen are preserved to a high degree, and therefore an important embodiment of the selection method of the invention involves that the introduction in step b) of the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope results  
10 in preservation of a substantial fraction of B-cell epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen. It is especially preferred that the analogue preserves the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

The preparation in step b) is preferably accomplished by  
15 molecular biological means or by means of solid or liquid phase peptide synthesis. Shorter peptides are preferably prepared by means of the well-known techniques of solid- or liquid-phase peptide synthesis. However, recent advances in this technology has rendered possible the production of full-  
20 length polypeptides and proteins by these means, and therefore it is also within the scope of the present invention to prepare the long constructs by synthetic means.

After having identified the useful analogues according to the above-discussed method, it is necessary to produce the ana-  
25 logue in larger scale. The polypeptides are prepared according to methods well-known in the art.

This can be done by molecular biological means comprising a first step of preparing a transformed cell by introducing, into a vector, a nucleic acid sequence encoding an analogue  
30 which has been selected according to the method and transforming a suitable host cell with the vector. The next step is to

culture the transformed cell under conditions facilitating the expression of the nucleic acid fragment encoding the analogue of the cell-associated antigen, and subsequently recovering the analogue from the culture supernatant or directly from the  
5 cells, e.g. in the form of a lysate). Alternatively, the analogue can be prepared by large-scale solid or liquid phase peptide synthesis, cf. above.

Finally, the product can, depending on the cell chosen as a host cell or the synthesis method used, be subjected to artificial post-translational modifications. These can be refolding schemes known in the art, treatment with enzymes (in  
10 order to obtain glycosylation or removal of undesired fusion partners, chemical modifications (again glycosylation is a possibility), and conjugation, e.g. to traditionally carrier  
15 molecules.

It should be noted that preferred analogues of the invention (and also the relevant analogues used in the methods of the invention) comprise modifications which results in a polypeptide having a sequence identity of at least 70% with the  
20 polypeptide antigen or with a subsequence thereof of at least 10 amino acids in length. Higher sequence identities are preferred, e.g. at least 75% or even at least 80% or 85%. The sequence identity for proteins and nucleic acids can be calculated as  $(N_{ref} - N_{dif}) \cdot 100 / N_{ref}$ , wherein  $N_{dif}$  is the total number of  
25 non-identical residues in the two sequences when aligned and wherein  $N_{ref}$  is the number of residues in one of the sequences. Hence, the DNA sequence AGTCAGTC will have a sequence identity of 75% with the sequence AATCAATC ( $N_{dif}=2$  and  $N_{ref}=8$ ).

Specific exemplary targets for the method of the invention

As discussed above, preferred weak, cell-associated polypeptide antigens are tumour-associated antigens. A non-limiting list of these are given in the following table.

Antigen	Reference
5 alpha reductase	Délos S, Carsol JL, Fina F, Raynaud JP, Martin PM. 5alpha-reductase and 17beta-hydroxysteroid dehydrogenase expression in epithelial cells from hyperplastic and malignant human prostate. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1998 Mar 16 75:6 840-6
$\alpha$ -fetoprotein	Esteban C, Terrier P, Frayssinet C, Uriel J. Expression of the alpha-fetoprotein gene in human breast cancer. <i>Tumour Biol</i> 1996 17:5 299-305
AM-1	Harada Y, Ohuchi N, Masuko T, Funaki Y, Mori S, Satomi S, Hashimoto Y. Characterization of a new breast cancer-associated antigen and its relationship to MUC1 and TAG-72 antigens. <i>Tohoku J Exp Med</i> 1996 Nov 180:3 273-88
APC	Dihlmann S, Amler LC, Schwab M, Wenzel A. Variations in the expression of the adenomatous polyposis coli (APC) tumor suppressor gene in human cancer cell lines of different tissue origin. <i>Oncol Res</i> 1997 9:3 119-27
APRIL	LE, Sordat B, Rimoldi D, Tschopp J. APRIL, a new ligand of the tumor necrosis factor family, stimulates tumor cell growth. <i>J Exp Med</i> 1998 Sep 21 188:6 1185-90
BAGE	Ebel P, Wildmann C, Sensi ML, Brasseur R, Renaud J-C, Coullie P, Boon T, and Van der Bruggen P. BAGE: a new gene encoding an antigen recognized on human melanomas by cytolytic lymphocytes. <i>Immunity</i> 1995, 2: 167-175.
$\beta$ -catenin	Hugh TJ, Dillon SA, O'Dowd G, Getty B, Pignatelli M, Poston GJ, Kinsella AR. beta-catenin expression in primary and metastatic colorectal carcinoma. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1999 Aug 12 82:4 504-11
Bcl2	Koty PP, Zhang H, Levitt ML. Antisense bcl-2 treatment increases programmed cell death in non-small cell lung cancer cell lines. <i>Lung Cancer</i> 1999 Feb 23:2 115-27
bcr-abl (b3a2)	Verfaillie CM, Bhatia R, Miller W, Mortari F, Roy V, Burger S, McCullough J, Stieglbauer K, Dewald G, Heimfeld S, Miller JS, McGlave PB. BCR/ABL-negative primitive progenitors suitable for transplantation can be selected from the marrow of most early-chronic phase

Antigen	Reference
	but not accelerated-phase chronic myelogenous leukemia patients. Blood 1996 Jun 1 87:11 4770-9
CA-125	Bast RC Jr, Xu FJ, Yu YH, Barnhill S, Zhang Z, Mills GB. CA 125: the past and the future. Int J Biol Markers 1998 Oct-Dec 13:4 179-87
CASP-8 / FLICE	Mandruzzato S, Brasseur F, Andry G, Boon T, van der Bruggen P., A CASP-8 mutation recognized by cytolytic T lymphocytes on a human head and neck carcinoma. J Exp Med 1997 Aug 29 186:5 785-93.
Cathepsins	Thomssen C, Schmitt M, Goretzki L, Oppelt P, Pache L, Dettmar P, Janicke F, Graeff H. Prognostic value of the cysteine proteases cathepsins B and cathepsin L in human breast cancer. Clin Cancer Res 1995 Jul 1:7 741-6
CD19	Scheuermann RH, Racila E. CD19 antigen in leukemia and lymphoma diagnosis and immunotherapy. Leuk Lymphoma 1995 Aug 18:5-6 385-97
CD20	Knox SJ, Goris ML, Trisler K, Negrin R, Davis T, Liles TM, Grillo-López A, Chinn P, Varns C, Ning SC, Fowler S, Deb N, Becker M, Marquez C, Levy R. Yttrium-90-labeled anti-CD20 monoclonal antibody therapy of recurrent B-cell lymphoma. Clin Cancer Res 1996 Mar 2:3 457-70
CD21	Shubinsky G, Schlesinger M, Polliack A, Rabinowitz R. Pathways controlling the expression of surface CD21 (CR2) and CD23 (Fc(epsilon)IIR) proteins in human malignant B cells. Leuk Lymphoma 1997 May 25:5-6 521-30
CD23	Shubinsky G, Schlesinger M, Polliack A, Rabinowitz R. Pathways controlling the expression of surface CD21 (CR2) and CD23 (Fc(epsilon)IIR) proteins in human malignant B cells. Leuk Lymphoma 1997 May 25:5-6 521-30
CD22	French RR, Penney CA, Browning AC, Stirpe F, George AJ, Glennie MJ. Delivery of the ribosome-inactivating protein, gelonin, to lymphoma cells via CD22 and CD38 using bispecific antibodies. Br J Cancer 1995 May 71:5 986-94
CD33	Nakase K, Kita K, Shiku H, Tanaka I, Nasu K, Dohy H, Kyo T, Tsutani H, Kamada N. Myeloid antigen, CD13, CD14, and/or CD33 expression is restricted to certain lymphoid neoplasms. Am J Clin Pathol 1996 Jun 105:6 761-8
CD35	Yamakawa M, Yamada K, Tsuge T, Ohrai H, Ogata T, Dobashi M, Imai Y. Protection of thyroid cancer cells by complement-regulatory factors. Cancer 1994 Jun 1 73:11 2308-17

Antigen	Reference
CD44	Naot D, Sionov RV, Ish-Shalom D. CD44: structure, function, and association with the malignant process. <i>Adv Cancer Res</i> 1997 71: 241-319
CD45	Buzzi M, Lu L, Lombardi AJ Jr, Fosner MR, Brautigan DL, Fast LD, Frackelton AR Jr. Differentiation-induced changes in protein-tyrosine phosphatase activity and commensurate expression of CD45 in human leukemia cell lines. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1992 Jul 15 52:14 4027-35
CD46	Yamakawa M, Yamada K, Tsuge T, Ohnui H, Ogata T, Dobashi M, Imai Y. Protection of thyroid cancer cells by complement-regulatory factors. <i>Cancer</i> 1994 Jun 1 73:11 2808-17
CD5	Stein R, Witz IP, Ovadia J, Goldenberg DM, Yron I. CD5+ B cells and naturally occurring autoantibodies in cancer patients. <i>Clin Exp Immunol</i> 1991 Sep 85:3 418-23
CD52	Ginaldi L, De Martinis M, Matutes E, Farahat N, Morilla R, Dyer MJ, Catovsky D. Levels of expression of CD52 in normal and leukemic B and T cells: correlation with in vivo therapeutic responses to Campath-1H. <i>Leuk Res</i> 1998 Feb 22:2 185-91
CD55 (791Tgp72)	Spendlove, I, L. Li, J. Carmichael, & L. G. Durrant. Decay accelerating factor (CD55): A target for cancer vaccine? (1999) <i>Cancer Research</i> 59: 2282-2286.
CD59	Jarvis GA, Li J, Hakulinen J, Brady KA, Nordling S, Dahiya R, Meri S. Expression and function of the complement membrane attack complex inhibitor protectin (CD59) in human prostate cancer. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1997 Jun 11 71:6 1049-55
CDC27	Wang RF, Wang X, Atwood AC, Topalian SL, Rosenberg SA. Cloning genes encoding MHC class II-restricted antigens: mutated CDC27 as a tumor antigen. <i>Science</i> 1999 May 21 284:5418 1351-4
CDK4	Wölfel, T., Hauer, M., Schneider, J., Serrano, M, Wölfel, C., Klehmann-Hieb, E., de Plaen, E., Hankeln, T., Meyer zum Büschenfelde, K, and Beach, D. A p16INK4a-insensitive CDK4 mutant targeted by cytolytic T lymphocytes in a human melanoma. <i>Science</i> 1995 Sep 1 269:5228 1281-4
CEA	Kass E, Schlom J, Thompson J, Guadagni F, Graziano P, Greiner JW. Induction of protective host immunity to carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), a self-antigen in CEA transgenic mice, by immunizing with a recombinant vaccinia-CEA virus. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1999 Feb 1 59:3 676-83
c-myc	Watson PH, Pon RT, Shiu RP. Inhibition of c-myc expres-

Antigen	Reference
	sion by phosphorothioate antisense oligonucleotide identifies a critical role for c-myc in the growth of human breast cancer. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1991 Aug 1 51:15 3996-4000
Cox-2	Tsuji M et al, Cyclooxygenase regulates angiogenesis induced by colon cancer cells. <i>Cell</i> 1998; 93:705-716
DCC	Gotley DC, Reeder JA, Fawcett J, Walsh MD, Bates P, Simmons DL, Antalis TM. The deleted in colon cancer (DCC) gene is consistently expressed in colorectal cancers and metastases. <i>Oncogene</i> 1996 Aug 15 13:4 787-95
DcR3	Genomic amplification of a decoy receptor for Fas ligand in lung and colon cancer. Pitti R et al, <i>Nature</i> 396, 699-703. 1998.
E6 / E7	Steller MA, Zou Z, Schiller JT, Baserga R. Transformation by human papillomavirus 16 E6 and E7: role of the insulin-like growth factor 1 receptor. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1996 Nov 1 56:21 5087-91
EGFR	Yang XD, Jia XC, Corvalan JR, Wang P, Davis CG, Jakobovits A: Eradication of established tumors by a fully human monoclonal antibody to the epidermal growth factor receptor without concomitant chemotherapy. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1999, 59(6):1236-43.
EMBP	Clinical study on estramustine binding protein (EMBP) in human prostate. Shiina H, Igawa M, Ishibe T. <i>Prostate</i> 1996 Sep 29:3 169-76.
Ena78	D.A. Arenberg et. al., Epithelial-neutrophil activating peptide (ENA-78) is an important angiogenic factor in non-small cell lung cancer. <i>J. Clin. Invest.</i> (1998) 102; 465-472.
farsyl transferase FGF8b and FGF8a	Dorkin TJ, Robinson MC, Marsh C, Bjartell A, Neal DE, Leung HY. FGF8 over-expression in prostate cancer is associated with decreased patient survival and persists in androgen independent disease. <i>Oncogene</i> 1999 Apr 29 18:17 2755-61
FLK-1/KDR	T. Annie T. Fong et al, SU5416 is a potent and selective inhibitor of the vascular endothelial growth factor receptor (Flk-1/KDR) that inhibits tyrosine kinase catalysis, tumor vascularization and growth of multiple tumor type. <i>Cancer Res</i> , 59, 99-106, 1999
Folic Acid Receptor	Dixon KH, Mulligan T, Chung KN, Elwood PC, Cowan KH. Effects of folate receptor expression following stable transfection into wild type and methotrexate transport-



Antigen	Reference
G250	deficient ZR-75-1 human breast cancer cells. <i>J Biol Chem</i> 1992 Nov 25 267:33 24140-7 Sivgi CR, Bander NH, Scott AM, O'Donoghue JA, Agouros G, Welt S, Finn RD, Morrissey F, Capitelli F, Williams JM, Deland D, Nakhre A, Bosterwijk E, Gulec S, Graham MC, Larson SM, Old LJ. Phase I/II radioimmunotherapy trial with iodine-131-labeled monoclonal antibody G250 in metastatic renal cell carcinoma. <i>Clin Cancer Res</i> 1998 Nov 4:11 2729-39
GAGE-Family	De Backer O, 10 others, Boon T, van der Bruggen P. Characterization of the GAGE genes that are expressed in various human cancers and in normal testis. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1999 Jul 1;59(13):3157-3165.
gastrin 17	Watson SA, Michaeli D, Grimes S, Morris TM, Crosbee D, Wilkinson M, Robinson G, Robertson JF, Steele RJ, Hardcastle JD. Anti-gastrin antibodies raised by gastrimmune inhibit growth of the human colorectal tumour AP5. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1995 Apr 10 61:2 233-40
Gastrin-releasing hormone (Bombesin)	Wang QJ, Knezetic JA, Schally AV, Pour PM, Adrian TE. Bombesin may stimulate proliferation of human pancreatic cancer cells through an autocrine pathway. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1996 Nov 15 68:4 523-34
GD2 / GD3 / GM2	Wiesner DA, Sweeley CC. Circulating gangliosides of breast-cancer patients. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1995 Jan 27 60:3 294-9
GnRH	Bahk JY, Hyun JS, Lee H, Kim MO, Cho GJ, Lee BH, Choi WS. Expression of gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH) and GnRH receptor mRNA in prostate cancer cells and effect of GnRH on the proliferation of prostate cancer cells. <i>Urol Res</i> 1998 26:4 259-64
GnTV	Hengstler JG, Arand M, Herrero ME, Oesch F. Polymorphisms of N-acetyltransferases, glutathione S-transferases, microsomal epoxide hydrolase and sulfotransferases: influence on cancer susceptibility. <i>Recent Results Cancer Res</i> 1998 154: 47-65
GP1	
gp100 / Pmel 17	Wagner SN, Wagner C, Schultewolter T, Gros M. Analysis of Pmel17/gp100 expression in primary human tissue specimens: implications for melanoma immuno- and gene-therapy. <i>Cancer Immunol Immunother</i> 1997 Jun 44:4 239-47
gp-100-in4	Kirkin AF, Dzhandzhugazyan K, Zeuthen J. Melanoma-associated antigens recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. <i>APMIS</i> 1998 Jul 106:7 665-79

Antigen	Reference
gp15	Maeurer MJ, et al. New treatment options for patients with melanoma: review of melanoma-derived T-cell epitope-based peptide vaccines. <i>Melanoma Res.</i> 1996 Feb;6(1):11-14.
gp75 / TRP-1	Lewis JJ, Houghton AN. Definition of tumor antigens suitable for vaccine construction. <i>Semin Cancer Biol</i> 1995 Dec 6:6 321-7
hCG	Hoermann R, Gerbes AL, Spoettl G, Juungst D, Mann K. Immunoreactive human chorionic gonadotropin and its free beta subunit in serum and ascites of patients with malignant tumors. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1992 Mar 15 52:6 1520-4
Heparanase	Vlodavsky I, Friedmann Y, Elkin M, Aingorn H, Atzmon R, Ishai-Michaeli R, Bitan M, Pappo O, Peretz T, Michal I, Spector L, Pecker I. Mammalian heparanase: gene cloning, expression and function in tumor progression and metastasis [see comments]. <i>Nat Med</i> 1999 Jul 5:7 793-802
Her2 / neu	Lewis JJ, Houghton AN. Definition of tumor antigens suitable for vaccine construction. <i>Semin Cancer Biol</i> 1995 Dec 6:6 321-7
HMTV	Kahl LP, Carroll AR, Rhodes P, Wood J, Read NG. An evaluation of the putative human mammary tumour retrovirus associated with peripheral blood monocytes. <i>Br J Cancer</i> 1991 Apr 63:4 534-40
Hsp70	Jaattela M, et al. Hsp70 exerts its anti-apoptotic function downstream of caspase-3-like proteases. <i>EMBO J.</i> 1998 Nov 2;17(21):6124-34.
hTERT (telomerase)	Vonderheide RH, Hahn WC, Schultze JL, Nadler LM. The telomerase catalytic subunit is a widely expressed tumor-associated antigen recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. <i>Immunity</i> June;10: 673-679. 1999.
IGFR1	M.J. Ellis et. al., Insulin-like growth factors in human breast cancer. <i>Breast Cancer Res. Treat.</i> (1998) 52: 175-184.
IL-13R	Murata T, Okiri NI, Debinski W, Puri EK. Structure of IL-13 receptor: analysis of subunit composition in cancer and immune cells. <i>Biochem Biophys Res Commun</i> 1997 Sep 8 238:1 90-4
iNOS	Klotz T, Bloch W, Volberg C, Engelmann U, Addicks K. Selective expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase in human prostate carcinoma. <i>Cancer</i> 1998 May 15 82:10 1897-903
Ki 67	Gerdes, J., U. Schwab, H. Lemke, and H. Stein. Production of a mouse monoclonal antibody reactive with a human nuclear antigen associated with cell proliferation.

Antigen	Reference
KIAA0205	tion. Int J Cancer 51, 13-20, 1983 Gueguen M, Patard JJ, Gaugler B, Brasseur F, Renaud JC, Van Cangh PJ, Boon T, Van den Eynde BJ. An antigen recognized by autologous CTLs on a human bladder carcinoma. J Immunol 1998 Jun 15 160:12 6168-94
K-ras, H-ras, N-ras	Abrams SI, Hand PH, Tsang KY, Schlom J. Mutant ras epitopes as targets for cancer vaccines. Semin Oncol 1996 Feb 23:1 118-34
KSA (CO17-1A)	Zhang S, Zhang HS, Reuter VE, Slovin SF, Scher HI, Livingston PO. Expression of potential target antigens for immunotherapy on primary and metastatic prostate cancers. Clin Cancer Res 1998 Feb 4:2 295-302
LDLR-FUT	Caruso MG, Osella AR, Notarnicola M, Berloco P, Leo S, Bonfiglio C, Di Leo A. Prognostic value of low density lipoprotein receptor expression in colorectal carcinoma. Oncol Rep 1998 Jul-Aug 5:4 927-30
MAGE Family (MAGE1, MAGE3)	Marchand M, et al., Tumor regressions observed in patients with metastatic melanoma treated with an antigenic peptide encoded by gene MAGE-3 and presented by HLA-A1. Int J Cancer 1999 Jan 18;80(2):219-30.
Mammaglobin	Watson MA, Dintzis S, Darrow CM, Voss LE, DiPersio J, Jensen R, Fleming TP. Mammaglobin expression in primary, metastatic, and occult breast cancer. Cancer Res 1999 Jul 1 59:13 3028-31.
MAP17	Kocher O, Cheresch P, Lee SW. Identification and partial characterization of a novel membrane-associated protein (MAP17) up-regulated in human carcinomas and modulating cell replication and tumor growth. Am J Pathol 1996 Aug 149:2 493-500
Melan-A / MART-1	Lewis JJ, Houghton AN. Definition of tumor antigens suitable for vaccine construction. Semin Cancer Biol 1995 Dec 6:6 321-7
mesothelin	Chang K, et al. Molecular cloning of mesothelin, a differentiation antigen present on mesothelium, mesotheliomas, and ovarian cancers. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A. 1996 Jan 9;93(1):136-40
MIC A/B	Groh V, Steinle A, Bauer S, and Spies T. Recognition of stress-induced MHC molecules by intestinal epithelial gamma delta T cells. Science 1998, 279: 1737-1740.
MT-MMP's, such as MMP2, MMP3, MMP7, and MMP9	Sato H and Seiki M., Membrane-type matrix metalloproteinases (MT-MMPs) in tumormetastasis., J Biochem (Tokyo) 1996 Feb;119(2):209-15
Mox1	Candia AF, Hu J, Crosby J, Lalley PA, Noden E, Nadeau JH, Wright CV. Mox-1 and Mox-2 define a novel homeobox

Antigen	Reference
	gene subfamily and are differentially expressed during early mesodermal patterning in mouse embryos. Development 1992 Dec 116:4 1123-36
Mucin, such as MUC-1, MUC-2, MUC-3, and MUC-4	Lewis JJ, Broughton AN. Definition of tumor antigens suitable for vaccine construction. Semin Cancer Biol 1995 Dec 6:6 321-7
MUM-1	Kirkin AF, Dzhandzugazyan K, Zenthen J. Melanoma-associated antigens recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. APMIS 1998 Jul 106:7 665-79
NY-ESO-1	Jager, E. et. al. Simultaneous humoral and cellular immune response against cancer-testis antigen NY-ESO-1: definition of human histocompatibility leukocyte antigen (HLA)-A2-binding peptide epitopes. J. Exp. Med. 1998, 187:265-270.
Osteonectin	Graham JD, Balleine RL, Milliken JS, Bilous AM, Clarke CL. Expression of osteonectin mRNA in human breast tumours is inversely correlated with oestrogen receptor content. Eur J Cancer 1997 Sep 33:10 1654-60
p15	Yoshida S, Todoroki T, Ichikawa Y, Hanai S, Suzuki H, Hori M, Fukao K, Miwa M, Uchida K. Mutations of p16Ink4/CDKN2 and p15Ink4B/MTS2 genes in biliary tract cancers. Cancer Res 1995 Jul 1 55:13 2756-60
P170 / MDR1	Trock BJ, Leonessa F, Clarke R. Multidrug resistance in breast cancer: a meta-analysis of MDR1/gp170 expression and its possible functional significance. J Natl Cancer Inst 1997 Jul 2 89:13 917-31
p53	Both J, Dittmer D, Rea D, Tartaglia J, Faoletti E, Levine AJ. p53 as a target for cancer vaccines: recombinant canarypox virus vectors expressing p53 protect mice against lethal tumor cell challenge. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 1996 May 14 93:10 4781-6.
p97 / melanotransferrin	Furukawa KS, Furukawa K, Real FX, Old LJ, Lloyd KO. A unique antigenic epitope of human melanoma is carried on the common melanoma glycoprotein gp95/p97. J Exp Med 1989 Feb 1 169:2 585-90
PAI-1	Grøndahl-Hansen J, Christensen IG, Rosenquist C, Brunner N, Mouridsen HT, Dano K, Elichert-Toft M. High levels of urokinase-type plasminogen activator and its inhibitor PAI-1 in cytosolic extracts of breast carcinomas are associated with poor prognosis. Cancer Res 1993 Jun 1 53:11 2513-21
PDGF	Vassbotn FS, Andersson M, Westermark B, Heldin CH, Ostman A. Reversion of autocrine transformation by a dominant negative platelet-derived growth factor mu-

Antigen	Reference
Plasminogen (uPA)	tant. Mol Cell Biol 1993 Jul 13:7 4066-76 Naitch H, Eguchi Y, Ueyama H, Kodama M, Hattori T. Localization of urokinase-type plasminogen activator, plasminogen activator inhibitor-1, 2 and plasminogen in colon cancer. Jpn J Cancer Res 1995 Jan 86:1 48-56
PRAME	Kirkin AF, Schandshugaryan K, Zeuthen J. Melanoma- associated antigens recognized by cytotoxic T lympho- cytes. APMIS 1998 Jul 106:7 665-79
Probasin	Matuo Y, Nishi N, Muguruma Y, Yoshitake Y, Kurata N, Wada F. Localization of prostatic basic protein ('probasin') in the rat prostates by use of monoclo- nal antibody. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 1985 Jul 16 130:1 293-300
Progenipoiectin PSA	Sanda MG, Smith DT, Charles LG, Hwang C, Pienta KJ, Schlom J, Milenic D, Panicali D, Montie JE. Recombinant vaccinia-PSA (PROSTVAC) can induce a prostate-specific immune response in androgen-modulated human prostate cancer. Urology 1999 Feb 53:2 260-6.
PSM	Kawakami M, Nakayama J. Enhanced expression of prostate-specific membrane antigen gene in prostate cancer as revealed by in situ hybridization. Cancer Res 1997 Jun 15 57:12 2321-4
RAGE-1	Gaugler B, 7 others, Van den Eynde BJ. A new gene coding for an antigen recognized by autologous cytoly- tic T lymphocytes on a human renal carcinoma. Immunogenetics 1996;44(5):323-330.
Rb	Dosaka-Akita H, Hu SX, Fujino M, Harada M, Kinoshita I, Xu HJ, Kuzumaki N, Kawakami Y, Benedict WF. Altered retinoblastoma protein expression in nonsmall cell lung cancer: its synergistic effects with altered ras and p53 protein status on prognosis. Cancer 1997 Apr 1 79:7 1329-37
RCAS1	Sonoda K, Nakashima M, Haku T, Kamura T, Nakano H, Watanabe T. A novel tumor-associated antigen expressed in human uterine and ovarian carcinomas. Cancer 1996 Apr 15;77(8):1501-1509.
SART-1	Kikuchi M, Nakao M, Inoue Y, Matsunaga K, Shichijo S, Yamana H, Itoh K. Identification of a SART-1-derived peptide capable of inducing HLA-A24-restricted and tumor-specific cytotoxic T lymphocytes. Int J Cancer 1999 May 5 81:3 459-66
SSX gene family	Gure AO, Tureci O, Sahin U, Tsang S, Scanlan MJ, Jager E, Knuth A, Pfreundschuh M, Old LJ, Chen YT. SSX: a

Antigen	Reference
	multigene family with several members transcribed in normal testis and human cancer. <i>Int J Cancer</i> 1997 Sep 17 72:6 966-71
STAT3	Bromberg JF, Wrzeszczynska MH, Devgan G, Zhao Y, Pestell RG, Albanese C, Darnell JE Jr. Stat3 as an oncogene. <i>Cell</i> 1999 Aug 6;98(3):295-303
STn (mucin assoc.)	Sandmaier BM, Oparin OV, Holmberg LA, Reddish MA, MacLean GD, Longenecker BM. Evidence of a cellular immune response against sialyl-Tn in breast and ovarian cancer patients after high-dose chemotherapy, stem cell rescue, and immunization with Theratope STn-KLH cancer vaccine. <i>J Immunother</i> 1999 Jan 22;1 54-66
TAG-72	Kurcki M, Fernsten PD, Wunderlich D, Colcher D, Simpson JF, Poole DJ, Schlom J. Serological mapping of the TAG-72 tumor-associated antigen using 19 distinct monoclonal antibodies. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1990 Aug 15 50:16 4872-9
TGF- $\alpha$	Imanishi K, Yamaguchi K, Suzuki M, Honda S, Yanaihara N, Abe K. Production of transforming growth factor-alpha in human tumour cell lines. <i>Br J Cancer</i> 1989 May 59:5 761-5
TGF- $\beta$	Picon A, Gold LI, Wang J, Cohen A, Friedman E. A subset of metastatic human colon cancers expresses elevated levels of transforming growth factor beta1. <i>Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev</i> 1993 Jun 7:6 497-504
Thymosin $\beta$ 15	Bao, L., Loda, M., Janmey, P. A., Stewart, R., Anand-Apte, B., and Zetter, B. R. Thymosin beta 15: a novel regulator of tumor cell motility upregulated in metastatic prostate cancer. <i>Nature Medicine</i> . 2 (12), 1322-1323. 1996
TNF- $\alpha$	Moradi MM, Carson LF, Weinberg B, Haney AF, Twigg LB, Ramakrishnan S. Serum and ascitic fluid levels of interleukin-1, interleukin-6, and tumor necrosis factor-alpha in patients with ovarian epithelial cancer. <i>Cancer</i> 1993 Oct 15 72:8 2433-40
TPA	Maulard C, Toubert ME, Chretien Y, Delanian S, Dufour E, Housset M. Serum tissue polypeptide antigen (S-TPA) in bladder cancer as a tumor marker. A prospective study. <i>Cancer</i> 1994 Jan 15 73:2 394-8
TPI	Nishida Y, Sumi H, Mihara H. A thiol protease inhibitor released from cultured human malignant melanoma cells. <i>Cancer Res</i> 1984 Aug 44:8 3324-9
TRP-2	Parkhurst MR, Fitzgerald EB, Southwood S, Sette A, Rosenberg SA, Kawakami Y. Identification of a shared HLA-A*0201-restricted T-cell epitope from the melanoma

Antigen	Reference
	antigen tyrosinase-related protein 2 (TRP2). Cancer Res 1998 Nov 1 58:21 4895-901
Tyrosinase	Kirkin AE, Dzhandzhugazyan K, Deuthen J. Melanoma-associated antigens recognized by cytotoxic T lymphocytes. APMIS 1998 Jul 106:7 665-72
VEGF	Hyodo I, Doi T, Endo H, Hosokawa Y, Nishikawa Y, Tanimizu M, Jinno K, Kotani Y. Clinical significance of plasma vascular endothelial growth factor in gastrointestinal cancer. Eur J Cancer 1998 Dec 34:13 2041-5
ZAG	Sanchez LM, Chirino AJ, Bjorkman PJ. 1999, Crystal structure of human ZAG, a fat-depleting factor related to MHC molecules. Science 19;283(5409):1914-9
p16INK4	Quelle DE, Ashmun RA, Hannon GJ, Rehberger PA, Trono D, Richter KH, Walker C, Beach D, Sherr CJ, Serrano M. Cloning and characterization of murine p16INK4a and p15INK4b genes. Oncogene 1995 Aug 17;11(4):635-45
Glutathione S-transferase	Hengstler JG, Arand M, Herrero ME, Oesch F. Polymorphisms of N-acetyltransferases, glutathione S-transferases, microsomal epoxide hydrolase and sulfotransferases: influence on cancer susceptibility. Recent Results Cancer Res 1998 154: 47-85

In the following, a number of specific tumour-associated antigens will be discussed in detail.

#### *Prostate-specific membrane antigen, PSM*

In U.S.A., prostate cancer is the second leading cause of cancer death (app. 40,000 per year), and 200,000 patients per year are diagnosed (Boring 1993). Approximately 1 out of 11 men eventually will develop prostatic cancer. Furthermore, approximately 40-60% of prostate cancer patients eventually develop extraprostatic extension of the disease (Babaian 1994). The main strategy in the present invention is to use a therapeutic vaccine as a supplementary therapy to prostatectomy in order to eliminate residual tumour tissue and metastases.

Several pathologic conditions are located to the prostate gland, including benign growth (BPH), infection (prostatitis) and neoplasia (prostatic cancer).

The biological aggressiveness of prostatic cancer is variable.

- 5 In some patients the detected tumour remains a latent histologic tumour and never becomes clinically significant. In other patients, the tumour progresses rapidly, metastasises and kills the patient in a relatively short time period (2-5 years).
- 10 The current primary treatment of prostate cancer is prostatectomy. However, due to the extensive spreading of prostate cancer cells the majority of prostatic cancer patients are not cured by local surgery. Patients with non-confined disease eventually receive systemic androgen ablation therapy, but the
- 15 annual death rate from prostatic cancer has not declined at all over the 50 years since androgen ablation became standard therapy for metastatic disease.

PSM is a membrane protein which is highly specific for prostatic tissues, benign as well as malignant, although expression of PSM has also been observed in other tissues such as

20 renal tissue and renal tumor, small intestine, brain and tumor neovasculature. Therefore, if surgery was successful, prostatectomised cancer patients should theoretically express PSM on residual malignant prostate tumour tissue or metastases

25 originating from the tumour. By inducing a strong CTL response and/or a strong polyclonal antibody response towards PSM, it is expected that residual tumour tissue can be eliminated.

Interestingly, upregulation of PSM expression is seen following androgen-deprivation therapy of prostate cancer patients

30 (Wright 1996). This would make a PSM-targeted treatment very



well-suited to follow the traditional androgen-deprivation therapy.

PSM was first identified in 1987 as a result of generating a monoclonal antibody, 7E11-C5.3, raised against an isolated human prostatic cancer cell, LNCaP (Horoszewicz 1987). The antibody recognised both normal and malignant prostatic epithelium, and was used in 1993 to purify and determine the amino acid sequence of the PSM protein and eventually clone the gene (Israeli 1993).

PSM is a type II transmembrane glycoprotein with a molecular weight of 84 kD as predicted from the nucleic acid sequence whereas the glycosylated version has an observed molecular weight of 100-120 kD. Sequencing of the gene encoding PSM revealed a putative membrane spanning region in connection with three cytosolic arginine anchor residues. The extracellular part of PSM constitute 707 of the total 750 amino acids of the protein, whereas the cytoplasmic domain is predicted to be 19 amino acids long (Israeli 1993). PSM-specific mRNA has been detected in prostate tumour tissue (Israeli 1994), indicating that the tumour antigen is not an aberrantly glycosylated protein which is the case with e.g. the Tn- or sTn-tumour antigens.

The full length PSM cDNA has been transfected into and expressed in a PSM negative human prostate cancer cell line, PC-3 (Kahn 1994). Furthermore, the full length (2.65 kilobases) cDNA has been transcribed and translated *in vitro* (Kahn 1994).

It has recently been demonstrated that PSM possesses hydrolytic activity resembling that of the N-acetylated  $\alpha$ -linked acidic dipeptidase (NAALADase) - in fact it has been demonstrated that the two proteins are identical. NAALADase is a membrane-bound hydrolase of the nervous system, which

catabolises the neuropeptide N-acetylaspartyl glutamate (NAAG) in order to affect the glutamatergic signalling processes. It is still not known whether this activity of PSM has any relevant biological function.

- 5 It is of some importance to predict whether undesired cross-reactivity with other proteins accessible for CTLs or antibodies would be expected following treatment with an autovaccine inducing PSM-specific immune responses. It has been shown that a part of the coding region of the PSM gene (amino acids
- 10 positions 418-567) has 54% homology to the human transferrin receptor (Israeli 1993). Also, complete sequence identity with the NAALADase enzyme has been found, cf. above. No identification of a functionally relevant similarity with other known peptidases could be made.
- 15 The homology to the transferrin receptor is very low and will preferably be disrupted in some of the inventive constructs. The observed sequence identity with human NAALADase is not expected to be an obstacle for a PSM-vaccine, partly because of the low ability of antibodies and CTLs to penetrate the
- 20 blood-brain barrier. Altogether, even with the most PSM-like construct, it is not expected to experience prohibitive cross-reactivity with other proteins in the patients.

From earlier studies it is clear that PSM is expressed on most prostate cancer cells and prostate originating metastases

25 tested. Further, most other cancers tested, such as carcinomas, sarcomas and melanomas of different tissues as well as a large panel of non-prostatic human cancer cell lines have proven PSM negative.

In addition to this, a very large number of other tissues have

30 been found to be PSM negative. These include colon, breast, lung, ovary, liver, urinary bladder, uterus, bronchus, spleen,

pancreas, tongue, esophagus, stomach, thyroid, parathyroid, adrenal, lymph node, aorta, vena cava, skin, mammary gland and placenta. However, RT-PCR has revealed the existence of PSM mRNA in some of these tissues.

5 Although PSM is predominantly found as a membrane bound molecule on prostate tissue small amounts of PSM can also be detected in the sera of normal individuals and in elevated levels in prostate cancer patients (Rechon 1994, Murphy 1995). The level of circulating PSM in these patients therefore  
10 allows a serological monitoring of the effectiveness of a PSM vaccine.

In conclusion, based on the entire amount of data available to date, PSM is an antigen with a high specificity for human prostate tissue and tumours originating therefrom. This means  
15 that in patients who have undergone prostatectomy, PSM is a tumour quasi-specific self-antigen. An effective PSM vaccine is therefore likely to target mainly prostatic or prostate-originating metastatic tissue.

As will be clear from Example 1 the method of the invention  
20 preferably entails that foreign T<sub>H</sub>-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the PSM amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 2 positions 16-52 and/or 87-103 and/or 210-230 and/or 269-289 and/or 298-324 and/or 442-465 and/or 488-514 and/or 598-630 and/or 643-662 and/or 672-699. Furthermore, a modified PSM  
25 molecule which has a foreign T<sub>H</sub>-epitope introduced in these positions is also a part of the invention.

Accordingly, the invention also pertains to an analogue of human PSM which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and  
30 B-cell epitopes of PSM and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as discussed herein. Preferred PSM analogues are those

wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the PSM amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the PSM amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the PSM amino acid sequence, and most preferred analogues are those wherein a foreign T<sub>H</sub>-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the PSM amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 2 positions 16-52 and/or 87-108 and/or 210-230 and/or 269-289 and/or 298-324 and/or 442-465 and/or 488-514 and/or 598-630 and/or 643-662 and/or 672-699.

#### 10 *Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (HCG)*

The relationship between embryonic markers and malignant phenotypes has been under discussion for many decades. An increasing body of data suggests that at least one such marker, human chorionic gonadotropin beta (hCG $\beta$ ), is consistently detected on cancer cells of many different histological origins, and that expression of this protein often correlates with increased metastatic properties. A humoral immune response directed against this soluble protein may reduce the chances of tumour spreading and/or may inhibit the recurrence of new primary growths post-surgery.

Human chorionic gonadotropin belongs to a family of glycoprotein hormones, including follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), and luteinizing hormone (LH), all of which are important regulators of reproductive expression and fetal survival. The members of this family of hormones are heterodimers, which share a common  $\alpha$ -chain. The  $\beta$ -chain is unique to each hormone and provides the specificity, with the  $\beta$ -chain of LH exhibiting the strongest sequence homology to hCG $\beta$  (approximately 80%). The apparent molecular weight of hCG-holo, is 37 kD, of which one third is contributed by carbohydrate. The post-translational sugar modifications include both N-linked and O-linked carbohydrate. Abun-

dant sialic acid residues are present and these give the protein a large negative charge. The crystal structure of hCG-holo has been solved (Lapthorn et al., 1994).

Based on the crystal structure it was found that hCG exhibits  
5 homology to a family of growth factors, including PDGF and TGF $\beta$  (Lapthorn et al., 1994). This suggests that hCG expression may help regulating cancer cell growth.

Human chorionic gonadotropin is a glycoprotein hormone, which is produced by the placental syncytiotrophoblasts soon after  
10 conception, and it is essential for successful gestation in the pregnant woman.

The pathophysiological role of embryonic markers for the development or maintenance of a cancer mass is not known. However, it is of interest to note that trophoblasts (where  
15 these proteins are normally produced) have both *angiogenic* and *invasive* characteristics, both of which are also necessary properties for a cancer cell. Further, it has been suggested that hCG (or its subunits) can inhibit maternal cellular immune responses to fetal tissue. For example, studies have  
20 shown that hCG directly suppresses T cell responses (Jacoby et al., 1984) and it has been proposed that because the lymph nodes draining (in this case) a primary melanoma tumour, are immunosuppressed, a more favourable environment for metastatic tumours to establish themselves may result. As a consequence,  
25 expression of hCG $\beta$  may help cancer cells spread into the secondary lymphoid organs. Finally, as mentioned above, structural homology between hCG and a number of growth factors have been demonstrated. Another possibility is therefore that secretion of hCG by cancer cells may give the tumour a growth  
30 advantage.

Expression of hCG $\beta$  has been shown in many different types of cancer, for example: a) Prostate adenocarcinoma: positivity for hCG $\beta$  on tissue sections were seen for patients with poor prognosis, irrespective of the histological grade of the  
5 tumour (Sheaff et al., 1996), b) different kinds of lung carcinomas; squamous cell (SQCC), adenocarcinoma (AC), and large cell (LCC), all showed a high percentage of reactivity for hCG $\beta$  (Boucher et al. 1995), c) pancreatic adenocarcinoma (Syrigos et al., 1993), d) neuroblastomas, brain cancers,  
10 retinoblastomas (Acevedo et al., 1997), e) malignant melanoma (Doi et al., 1996), f) bladder carcinomas (Lazar et al., 1995). A recent paper describes a DNA approach, in which mice were immunized with a hCG $\beta$  expression construct (Geissler et al., 1997). In this *in vivo* model inhibition of tumour growth  
15 was strongly associated with CTL-activity, however high titers of antibodies (which neutralized the biological effect of intact hCG on its cellular receptor) were also detected.

The use of hCG as an immunogen has been described in several papers, focussing on its use as a contraceptive vaccine (Talwar et al., 1976 and Talwar et al., 1994). A very high degree  
20 of efficacy and safety has been observed in an anti-fertility clinical trial, using a vaccine against hCG-holo (Talwar et al., 1994). Phase I clinical trials of cancer patients with a vaccine against a synthetic carboxy-terminal peptide of hCG $\beta$   
25 conjugated to diphtheria toxoid have also been conducted (Triozi et al., 1994) and phase II trials are underway. Despite the fact that the idea to use hCG $\beta$  as a cancer vaccine target has been around for some time, it has not been explored in conjunction with the AutoVac technology.

30 It is known that cells from non-embryonic tissue, or benign neoplasms, do not express hCG $\beta$ . Therefore, there should be no potential side effects from vaccination against this molecule (apart from the effects on pregnancy). Because it is expressed

by so many different kinds of cancers this molecule has been proposed to be the "definitive cancer biomarker" (Acevedo et al., 1995 and Regelson W., 1995) and as such would be an attractive target to go after.

- 5 Suitable animal models for Further studies of the efficacy of a hCG based vaccine can be found in Acevedo et al., Cancer Det. and Prev. Suppl. (1987) 1: 477-486, and in Kellen et al., Cancer Immunol. Immun.Ther. (1982) 13: 2-4.

### *Her2*

- 10 The tyrosine kinase receptors Her2 and EGFr are believed to play a crucial role in the malignant transformation of normal cells and in the continued growth of cancer cells. Overexpression is usually linked to a very poor prognosis. During the past few years there has been many reports concerning the use  
15 of antibodies against these receptors as therapy for cancers that overexpress either or both of these receptors. Genentech Inc. has finished several successful clinical trials on breast cancer patients using a monoclonal antibody against Her2 and has recently obtained an FDA approval for the marketing of the  
20 anti-Her2 monoclonal antibody preparation, Herceptin®.

The autovaccination technology disclosed herein as applied on the Her2 molecule would elicit polyclonal antibodies that would predominantly react with Her2. Such antibodies are expected to attack and eliminate tumour cells as well as  
25 prevent metastatic cells from developing into metastases. The effector mechanism of this anti-tumour effect would be mediated via complement and antibody dependent cellular cytotoxicity.

Dependent on the choice of constructs, the induced autoantibodies could also inhibit cancer cell growth through inhibition  
30

of growth factor dependent oligo-dimerisation and internalisation of the receptors. And, most importantly, the Her2 analogues are expected to be able to induce CTL responses directed against known and/or predicted Her2 epitopes displayed  
5 by the tumour cells

Her2 is a member of the epidermal growth factor receptor family (c-erbB) which consists of four different receptors to date: c-erbB-1 (EGFr), c-erbB-2 (Her2, c-Neu), c-erbB-3 and c-erbB-4 (Salomon et al, 1995). C-erbB-3 and c-erbB-4 are less  
10 well characterised than EGFr and Her2. Her2 is an integral glycoprotein. The mature protein has a molecular weight of 185 kD with structural features that closely resembles the EGFr receptor (Prigent et al, 1992). EGFr is also an integral  
15 membrane receptor consisting of one subunit. It has an apparent molecular weight of 170 kD and consists of a surface ligand-binding domain of 621 amino acids, a single hydrophobic transmembrane domain of 23 amino acids, and a highly conserved cytoplasmic tyrosine kinase domain of 542 amino acids. The protein is N-glycosylated (Prigent et al, 1994).

20 All proteins in this family are tyrosine kinases. Interaction with the ligand leads to receptor dimerisation, which increases the catalytic action of the tyrosine kinase (Bernard, 1995, Chantry 1995). The proteins within the family are able to homo- and heterodimerise which is important for their  
25 activity. The EGFr conveys growth promoting effects and stimulates uptake of glucose and amino acids by cells (Prigent et al 1992). Her2 also conveys growth promoting signals. Only EGFr binds EGF and TGF-alpha. These ligands do not bind to the other receptors in the family (Prigent et al., 1992). The  
30 ligands for Her2 are not fully determined. However, heregulin has been shown to induce phosphorylation by activating Her2. This does not appear to be due to a direct binding to the receptor but it is believed that heregulin is a ligand for



erbB-3 and erbB-4 which then activates Her2 by oligo-dimerisation (Solomon et al 1995).

The homology between the proteins of EGF receptor family is most pronounced in the tyrosine kinase domain at the cytoplasmic part of the molecules (82% between EGFr and Her2). The homology is less in the extracellular part - from 41% to 46% in different domains (Prigent et al, 1992).

The epidermal growth factor receptor is expressed on normal tissues in low amounts, but it is overexpressed in many types of cancers. EGFr is overexpressed in breast cancers (Earp et al, 1993, Eppenberger 1994), gliomas (Schlegel et al, 1994), gastric cancer (Tkunaga et al, 1995), cutaneous squamous carcinoma (Fujii 1995), ovarian cancer (van Dam et al, 1994) and others. Her2 is also expressed on few normal human tissues in low amount, most characteristically on secretory epithelia. Over expression of Her2 occurs in about 30% of breast, gastric, pancreatic, bladder and ovarian cancers.

The expression of these receptors varies depending on the degree of differentiation of the tumours and the cancer type, e.g., in breast cancer, primary tumours overexpress both receptors; whereas in gastric cancer, the overexpression occurs at a later stage in metastatic tumours (Salomon et al, 1995). The number of overexpressed receptors on carcinoma cells is greater than 10<sup>6</sup>/cell for several head and neck cancers, vulva, breast and ovarian cancer lines isolated from patients (Dean et al, 1994).

There are several reasons why the EGFr family of receptors constitute suitable targets for tumour immunotherapy. First, they are overexpressed in many types of cancers, which should direct the immune response towards the tumour. Second, the tumours often express or overexpress the ligands for this

family of receptors and some are hypersensitive to the proliferative effects mediated by the ligands. Third, patients with tumours that overexpress growth factor receptors often have a poor prognosis. The overexpression has been closely  
5 linked with poor prognosis especially in breast cancer, lung cancer and bladder cancer (2) and is apparently associated with invasive/metastatic phenotypes, which are rather insensitive to conventional therapies (Eccles et al, 1994).

Overexpression of Her2 is in some cases a result of amplification of the gene and in other cases increased transcription  
10 and translation. The overexpression of Her2 is associated with poor prognosis in breast, ovarian cancers, gastric cancer, bladder cancer and possibly in non-small cell lung cancers (Solomon et al, 1995).

15 Phase I clinical trials have been performed with a bispecific antibody in patients with advanced breast and ovarian cancer. The antibody was bispecific against Her2 and FcγRI (Weiner et al, 1995). Efficient lysis of Her2 over expressing tumour cells was observed with a bispecific antibody against Her2 and  
20 CD3 (Zhu et al, 1995).

Treatment of scid mice xenografted with human gastric cancer with an anti-Her2 monoclonal antibody prolonged the survival of the mice (Ohniski et al, 1995). The anti-tumour activities of monoclonal antibodies against Her2, in vitro and in vivo is  
25 not due to an identical mechanism; they may act as partial ligand agonists, alter Her2 receptor turnover and phosphorylation or may affect dimerization (Lupu et al, 1995).

Similarly, it has been shown that antibodies to EGFR can also interfere with growth factor interactions. (Baselga et al,  
30 1994, Modjahedi et al, 1993a, Wu et al, 1995, Modjahedi et al,

1993b, Tosi et al, 1995, Dean et al, 1994, Bier et al, 1995, Modjtahedi et al, 1996, Valone 1995).

Hence, an important embodiment of the methods of the invention is one wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the Her2 amino acid sequence defined by the amino acid numbering in SEQ ID NO: 3 positions 5-25 and/or 59-73 and/or 103-117 and/or 149-163 and/or 210-224 and/or 250-264 and/or 325-339 and/or 369-383 and/or 465-479 and/or 579-593 and/or 632-652 and/or 653-667 and/or 661-675 and/or 695-709 and/or 710-730, cf. the Examples.

Accordingly, the invention also relates to an analogue of human Her2 which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of Her2 and including at least one foreign  $T_H$  epitope as discussed herein. It is preferred that the at least one foreign  $T_H$  epitope is present as an insertion in the Her2 amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence. Most preferred analogues are those defined above, i.e. those wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the Her2 amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 3 positions positions 5-25 and/or 59-73 and/or 103-117 and/or 149-163 and/or 210-224 and/or 250-264 and/or 325-339 and/or 369-383 and/or 465-479 and/or 579-593 and/or 632-652 and/or 653-667 and/or 661-675 and/or 695-709 and/or 710-730.

#### FGF8b

It has been shown by several investigators that FGF8b can induce proliferation, transformation, differentiation and in some cases greatly increase the tumorigenicity of mammalian cells and tissues (Tanaka 1992, Kouchara 1994, Lorenzi 1995,

MacArthur 1995a, Crossley 1996a, 1996b, Ghosh 1996, Ohuchi 1997a, Rudra-Ganguly 1998). These effects are primarily mediated through the binding of FGF8b to members of the fibroblast growth factor receptors FGFR2, FGFR3, and FGFR4 (MacArthur 5 1995b, Blunt 1997, Tanaka 1998). Thus, cells expressing one of these receptors and FGF8(b) have been shown to provide an autocrine growth-signaling cascade leading to proliferation. The biological effect of FGF8b is most likely partly mediated through the JAK/STAT3 pathway, since we and others have observed that addition of FGF8b to the growth medium of certain 10 cells does promote phosphorylation of STAT3, a feature suspected to render cells resistant to apoptosis (Catlett-Falcone 1999).

In addition to the in vitro observations mentioned above, it 15 has recently been shown that FGF8(b) expression is significantly upregulated in both prostate and breast cancers (Marsh 1999, Dorkin 1999). We therefore believe, that an autovaccine against FGF8(b) will be a very efficient means of treating a number of FGF8-expressing tumors, or perhaps increase their 20 sensitivity towards apoptosis inducing agents.

### **Prostate cancer**

The biological aggressiveness of prostatic cancer is variable. In some patients the detected tumor remains a latent histologic tumor and never becomes clinically significant. In other 25 patients, the tumor progresses rapidly, metastasizes, and kills the patient in a relatively short time (2-5 years).

For the purpose of diagnosis, and to follow the response to therapy of prostate cancer, determination of the circulating levels of two proteins has primarily been used: prostatic acid 30 phosphatase (PAP) and prostate specific antigen (PSA) (Nguyen 1990, Henttu 1989). Due to disruption of the normal architec-

ture of the prostate gland in response to cancer development, these soluble proteins are released into the circulation where they can be detected as markers for e.g. metastatic spread.

The current primary treatment of prostate cancer is prostatec-  
5 tomy. However, due to the extensive spreading of prostate cancer cells the majority of prostatic cancer patients are not cured by local surgery. Patients with non-confined disease receive systemic androgen ablation therapy, but the annual death rate from prostatic cancer has not declined at all over  
10 the 50 years since androgen ablation became standard therapy for metastatic disease.

RT-PCR analysis has shown that FGF8 mRNA is produced by the human prostatic epithelial tumor cell lines LNCaP, PC-3, ALVA-31, and DU145 respectively, with FGF8b being the most  
15 prominent isoform (Tanaka 1995, Ghosh 1996). The growth of the androgen-responsive LNCaP cells are stimulated by addition of recombinant FGF8b (Tanaka 1995), while DU145 cells could be growth inhibited by transfection with vira expressing anti-sense FGF8b (Rudra-Ganguly 1998). This, together with  
20 evidence from developmental studies discussed below, indicate a role for FGF8b in maintaining the cancerous state of these cell lines.

Using FGF8a cDNA for in situ hybridization experiments, Leung and co-workers have shown that a high proportion (80% (n=106),  
25 and 71% (n=31)) of prostatic cancers produce FGF8 mRNA, and that the amount of FGF8 mRNA correlate with the severeness of the tumors ( $P < 0.0016$ , and  $P < 0.05$ , respectively) (Leung 1996, Dorkin 1999). Using a monoclonal anti-FGF8b antibody, this isoform was shown responsible for the overexpression of FGF8b  
30 (Dorkin 1999). Additionally, men with tumors which expressed high levels of FGF8 had worse survival ( $P = 0.034$ ), and that FGF8 expression persisted in androgen independent prostate

cancers (Dorkin 1999). According to the data presented by Dorkin and coworkers the expression of FGF8b in prostate cancer could predict patient survival.

Immunohistochemical analysis using a monoclonal antibody  
5 against FGF8, has detected the protein in 93% (n=43) of human prostate cancers (Tanaka 1998). Normal prostatic tissue or benign prostatic hyperplasia does produce low levels of FGF8 mRNA, and does not contain detectable amounts of FGF8 protein (Leung 1996, Yoshimura 1996, Ghosh 1996, Tanaka 1998, Dorkin  
10 1999).

These results indicate that an autovaccine against FGF8(b) would be reactive against prostatic tumor tissue and thus, extremely valuable in the treatment of prostatic cancer.

#### **Breast cancer**

15 The current treatment of breast cancer is surgery. However, due to the extensive spreading of breast cancer cells a large part of breast cancer patients are not cured by local surgery. Patients with non-confined disease eventually receive androgen ablation therapy, chemotherapy, and or radiation therapy. The  
20 annual death rate from breast cancer is, however, still relatively high.

FGF8 was originally isolated from a mouse mammary carcinoma cell-line (SC-3), from which the expression could be induced by adding androgen to the medium (Nonomura 1990). The protein  
25 is also known to induce the proliferation of these as well as other mammalian cells. Recently FGF8b mRNA has been shown to be present in eight (n=8) human breast cancer cell lines (MDA-MB-231, MDA-MB-415, ZR 75-1, T-47-D, SK-BR-III, PMC-42, HBL-100 and MCF-7) (Tanaka 1995, Payson 1996, Wu 1997, Marsh  
30 1998).

Wnt-1 transgenic mice infected with mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV) develop mammary tumors. FGF8 transcription is activated in 50% of these tumors (MacArthur 1995c, Kapoun 1997).

Transgenic mice that are carrying the FGF8b cDNA under control of the very specific mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV) promoter, are shown to spontaneously develop FGF8b expressing mammary tumors (Coombes, personal communication).

Very recent data shows that FGF8(b) expression is upregulated in breast cancer (Tanaka 1998, Marsh 1999). Tanaka and co-workers used a new monoclonal FGF8 antibody in immunohistochemical studies. They showed that FGF8 was present in 67% (n=12) of breast cancers, and that androgen receptors were present in 89% of FGF8 positive breast diseases (Hyperplasia, Fibroadenoma, Intraductal papilloma, and cancers), which would allow the autocrine growth promoting loop to be involved in the progression of breast cancers (Tanaka 1998). Using a semi-quantitative RT-PCR method, it was shown that elevated levels of FGF8 mRNA were found in malignant compared to non-malignant breast tissues. Significantly more malignant tissues were expressing FGF8 ( $p=0.019$ ) at significantly higher levels ( $p=0.031$ ) (68 breast cancers and 24 non-malignant breast tissues) (Marsh 1999).

It has not yet been fully established that FGF8(b) functions as an autocrine growth factor. However, the fact that a large number of tumors overexpress FGF8b argues strongly that an autovaccine against FGF8b could be effective against a large percentage of breast and prostate cancers. The data reported by Marsh, Dorkin, and Tanaka indicate that an autovaccine against FGF8(b) could be used for treatment of both breast and prostate cancers, and the rather vague data presented by Dorkin et. al, is a further support of the opinion that FGF8 is involved in the proliferation of human cancer cells.

### Description of FGF8b

FGF8 belongs to the family of fibroblast growth factors (FGFs). These growth regulatory proteins are small ~200 amino acid residue proteins that all are involved in the induction of proliferation and differentiation of a wide range of cells. For a recent review of the involvement of the fibroblast growth factors in vertebrate limb development, see Johnson 1997. The FGF family members are evolutionary related and share 20-50% amino acid sequence identity.

FGF8b is a splice variant of FGF8, originally termed androgen induced growth factor (AIGF). AIGF was first identified as a protein secreted by a murine mammary carcinoma derived cell line (SC-3) upon stimulation with androgen (Nonomura 1990). The murine FGF8 gene contains 6 exons, potentially coding for eight different FGF8-isoforms (FGF8a-h), differing only in the N-terminal part of the molecules (Crossley 1995, MacArthur 1995b). Human FGF8 has the same gene structure as the murine gene. However, due to a stop codon in exon 1B, human FGF8 can possibly exist in four different isoforms namely FGF8a, FGF8b, FGF8e, and FGF8f (Gemel 1996). The gene structures and the amino acid sequences of the four human isoforms are illustrated in Fig. 5.

Mature FGF8b contains 193 amino acid residues, and has a calculated molecular weight of 22.5kDa. The highly basic protein contains 21 arginine and 14 lysine residues resulting in a calculated isoelectric point of 10.84, and a calculated positive charge of 19,8 at pH 7.0. It contains two cysteine residues, and has two potential N-glycosylation sites. Due to the nature of the investigations performed involving FGF8b very little is known about the FGF8b protein moiety. It has, however, been expressed heterologously from bacteria, purified by the use of a C-terminal hexa-Histidine tag, and in vitro



refolded to a soluble and biologically active state (MacArthur 1995a, Blunt 1997).

### **Biological activity of FGF8b**

As mentioned above, FGF8(b) was first isolated as a factor  
5 that was released from a androgen dependent mouse mammary  
tumor cell line, and it has been shown that this protein can  
induce the proliferation of these cells. The morphological  
changes mimic those induced by testosterone, which is also  
known to induce the synthesis of FGF8(b) mRNA (Tanaka 1992).  
10 The proliferation can be inhibited by FGF8(b) antisense oligos  
(Nonomura 1990, Tanaka 1992, and Yamanishi 1994). Indeed, a  
human prostate cancer cell line DU145 could be growth inhi-  
bited by transfection with virus expressing anti-sense FGF8b  
(Rudra-Ganguly 1998). Recent data shows that FGF8b induces  
15 phosphorylation of STAT3 - a protein that is suspected to be  
involved in resistance to apoptosis (Catlett-Falcone 1999,  
Johnston, C.L., unpublished results).

FGF8b has by several investigators been shown very efficient  
in inducing the transformation of NIH3T3 or SC115 cells (Miya-  
20 shita 1994, Kouhara 1994, Lorenzi 1995, MacArthur 1995a). By  
using recombinantly expressed proteins, it has also been shown  
that this induction of morphological changes is far more  
efficient with FGF8b than when using FGF8a or FGF8c (MacArthur  
1995a, Ghosh 1996). Interestingly, the N-terminal half of the  
25 FGF8b molecule alone, was shown to be sufficient for transfor-  
mation of NIH3T3 cells, and even the small FGF8b specific  
peptide (QVTVPSSPNFT) could enable the cells to grow 2-3 times  
longer than normal in 0.1% serum (Rudra-Ganguly 1998). Fur-  
thermore, NIH3T3 cells stably transfected with an expression  
30 vector encoding FGF8b has been reported to be very tumorigenic  
when injected intraocularly into nude mice (Kouhara 1994,  
Ghosh 1996).

In vivo, FGF8b is known to be expressed at certain stages of development in vertebrates. A summary of the biological roles assigned to FGF8(b) is shown in Table 1. For reviews on the involvement of FGF8 in vertebrate development see Goldfarb 5 1999, and Johnson 1997.

Table: Various sites/tissues known to produce FGF8, and the proposed biological role(s).

	Action/mechanism/presence (species)	References
	Present in the developing limb buds (mouse)	Heikinheimo 1994, Ohuchi 1994
10	Limb bud outgrowth (chicken)	Kuwana 1997, Xu 1998
	Induction of ectopic limb formation from mesoderm (chicken)	Crossley 1996b
	Induction of midbrain formation from the caudal diencephalon (chicken)	Crossley 1996a
15	Initiation of wing outgrowth in a wingless mutant (chicken)	Ohuchi 1997a
	Role in dorsoventral patterning of the gastrula (zebrafish)	Fürthauer 1997
	Required during gastrulation, cardiac, craniofacial, forebrain, midbrain and cerebellar development (tissue specific knock-out mice)	Meyers 1998
20	Role in tooth morphogenesis (mouse)	Kettunen 1998

It is believed that FGF8(b) mediates its action through binding to the fibroblast growth factor receptors (FGFR's). Specifically, FGF8b is known to be able to activate FGFR2c, FGFR3c, FGFR4c, and to some extent also FGFR1c, but not FGFR1b, -2b or -3b (MacArthur 1995b, Blunt 1997). In case of the induction of outgrowth of ectopic chicken limbs, it is 25 implicated that FGF10, FGFR2, and FGF8 interact and that this 30 could be sufficient for outgrowth (Kuwana 1997, Xu 1998).

These results support the hypothesis that FGF8(b) can act in an auto- and paracrine manner, leading to the normal outgrowth and patterning of several anatomical structures during vertebrate development. Importantly, FGF8 "total knock out" mice do  
5 not survive most likely due to the elaborate involvement of the protein in the development of the embryo.

### Homology to other proteins

It is of significant importance to predict whether undesired cross-reactivity with other proteins accessible for antibodies  
10 would be expected following treatment with an autovaccine inducing FGF8b specific autoantibodies. Due to the high degree of sequence identity between FGF8b and the other FGF8 molecules, an autovaccine will be expected to cross-react with these proteins. This, however, will presumably be advanta-  
15 geous, since none of these proteins are reported to be expressed in tissues or by cell-lines that do not already express FGF8b.

Amino acid residues 55 through 175 of FGF8b shows a relatively low but significant degree of sequence identity to the other  
20 FGFs. It is commonly accepted (and several times proven) that a significant degree of sequence identity between two protein domains is also reflected in a high degree of tertiary structure similarity. Therefore, the FGF family members are all generally expected to be structurally similar. The three  
25 dimensional structure of FGF2 has been resolved from crystals as well as in solution (Ago 1991, Zhang 1991, Zhu 1991, Eriksson 1993, Blaber 1996, Moy 1996). FGF2 is composed entirely of beta-sheet structure, comprising a three-fold repeat of a four-stranded antiparallel beta-meander. This beta-barrel  
30 structure is totally conserved between interleukin 1, FGF2 (or basic FGF), and FGF1 (or acidic FGF). Nuclear magnetic resonance analysis of FGF2 in solution has shown that the N-termi-

nal part of the molecule forms a relatively flexible structure. The remaining part of FGF8b (amino acid residues 1-54 and 176-215) only shows a low degree of sequence identity to known proteins.

- 5 Based on the structural and alignment data, it is generally assumed that the three dimensional structural core of the other fibroblast growth factors closely resemble those of FGF1 and FGF2. These structural considerations are important factors in our design of the FGF8b mutant autovaccine molecules.
- 10 Importantly, due to the relatively low degree of sequence identity between FGF8 and any of the other members of the FGF family, the surface of FGF8 would be very different from that of other FGFs, thereby minimizing the cross-reactivity of
- 15 FGF8b autovaccine generated antibodies with other FGF family members. Due to the very low degree of homology to other proteins than the fibroblast growth factors, we do not expect an autovaccine against FGF8b to cross-react with any other proteins.
- 20 It should be emphasized, however, that an autovaccine against FGF8b probably would cross react with all isoforms of FGF8. This will, however, presumably not be a problem since none of the FGF8 isoforms are expected to be expressed at significant levels in the adult. It is even possible that this cross
- 25 reaction will be beneficial in the treatment of cancer, since it has been shown that at least some cancer cell lines express other isoforms in addition to FGF8b.

#### **Tissue distribution of FGF8b**

- Ideally, the induced autoantibodies and the subsequent effec-
- 30 tor mechanisms as well as the expected CTL response raised by autovaccination should only be directed towards tissues that

are to be eliminated in the patient. Therefore, the tissue distribution of the antigen, which is targeted by an autovaccine, is an issue of great importance concerning the safety of the vaccine.

5 Table: Expression of FGF8b in various tissues and cells

**Human**

10	Breast cancer cell lines (MDA-MB-231, MDA-MB-415, ZR 75-1, T-47-D, SK-BR-III, PMC-42, HBL-100, and MCF-7)	((RT-PCR) Tanaka 1995, Pay- son 1996, Wu 1997, Marsh 1999)
	Breast tumors	((mAb) Tanaka 1998, (RT-PCR) Marsh 1999)
	Normal breast tissue	((RT-PCR) Wu 1997, Marsh 1999 (mAb) Tanaka 1998)
	Prostate cancer (93%)	((in situ hyb.) Leung 1996, Dorkin 1999, (mAb) Tanaka 1998)
	Breast disease	((mAb) Tanaka 1998)
15	Prostatic tumor cells (LNCaP, PC-3, DU145, and ALVA-31)	((RT-PCR) Tanaka 1995, Ghosh 1996, Schmitt 1996)
	fetal kidney	((Northern blot) Ghosh 1996)
	adult prostate, testis, kid- ney, neurons	((RT-PCR) Ghosh 1996, Wu 1997, Dorkin 1999)
20	teratocarcinoma cells (Tera-2)	((RT-PCR) Wu 1997)

**Murine**

25	Breast cancer cell lines (SC-115, RENCA)	((RT-PCR) Yoshimura 1996)
	Hypothalamus, Testis	((RT-PCR) Yoshimura 1996)
	Mammary tumors (Wnt-1 trans- genic)	((Northern blot) MacArthur 1995c)
	Embryonic brain	((in situ hyb.) Crossley 1995, Heikinheimo 1994, Ohuchi 1994, Shimamura 1997, (RT-PCR) Blunt 1997)
	Ovary, testis	((Northern blot) Valve 1997)
	Developing face and limb buds	((pAb) MacArthur 1995b (in situ hyb.) Heikinheimo 1994, Ohuchi 1994, Crossley 1995)
30	Gastrula	((in situ hyb.) Crossley 1995)

**Chicken**

	Embryonic brain	((in situ hyb.) Crossley 1996a)
--	-----------------	------------------------------------

developing limb buds

((in situ hyb.) Ohuchi  
1997a,b)Rat

Prostate and testis

(RT-PCR) Scmitt 1996

The above table shows a wide selection of tissue distribution,  
5 and cell line data of FGF8b expression. As seen from the  
table, most of the data regarding tissue distribution is  
generated using the sensitive RT-PCR method. This is because  
Northern blotting analysis does not detect any FGF8b mRNA in  
any normal tissues except from fetal kidney. From this scarce  
10 data, it is generally assumed that expression of FGF8b mRNA in  
the adult is very limited, and thus, an autovaccine against  
FGF8b would presumably not be reactive against normal tissue.  
Due to the fact that small amounts of FGF8b could interact in  
unknown systems in the adult, the tissue distribution of the  
15 protein needs further analysis. There are, however, in our  
opinion no indications that an autovaccine against FGF8b would  
result in serious unwanted effects on the patients.

**Effects of antibodies against FGF8b**

So far, no attempts to treat prostate cancer using monoclonal  
20 antibodies have been published. Clinical trials with monoclo-  
nal antibodies are ongoing in breast cancer therapy studies,  
however.

Antibodies against FGF8b will probably block the interaction  
between FGF8b and its receptors, which will inhibit the cell  
25 membrane ruffling and cell proliferation, very likely  
decreasing the motility and invasiveness of the cancer cells.

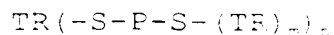
Hence, the invention also relates to embodiments of the  
methods described herein where, where the foreign T-cell  
epitope is introduced in a part of the FGF8b amino acid se-

quence defined by SEQ ID NO: 6 positions 1-54 and/or 178-215 and/or 55-58 and/or 63-68 and/or 72-76 and/or 85-91 and/or 95-102 and/or 106-111 and/or 115-120 and/or 128-134 and/or 138-144 and/or 149-154 and/or 158-162 and/or 173-177. It should be noted that it is especially preferred not to introduce variations or modifications in positions 26-45 and in the C-terminus starting at amino acids 186-215, since these stretches show the least homology with a recently discovered protein, FGF-18, which seems to be expressed in a variety of non-tumour tissues.

Accordingly, the invention also pertains to an analogue of human/murine FGF8b which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of FGF8b and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as discussed herein. It is preferred that the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence. Most preferred analogues in this embodiment are those where the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 6 positions 1-54 and/or 178-215 and/or 55-58 and/or 63-68 and/or 72-76 and/or 85-91 and/or 95-102 and/or 106-111 and/or 115-120 and/or 128-134 and/or 138-144 and/or 149-154 and/or 158-162 and/or 173-177.

### Mucins

The invention also pertains to methods of the invention employing specifically modified versions of the human mucins, especially any of MUC-1 through MUC-4, preferably MUC-1. The analogues comprise the following structure



-where TR is a tandem repeat derived from the naturally occurring mucin, P is a foreign T<sub>H</sub>-epitope as discussed herein, S is an inert spacer peptide having from 0 to 15 amino acid residues, preferably between 0 and 10 amino acid residues, and n is an integer of from 1 to 30, and m is an integer from 1 to 10, preferably from 3 to 5.

When producing such a mucin analogue in e.g. a human cell line or by purification from a tissue, the direct result will normally not have a glycosylation pattern as desired, i.e. an aberrant glycosylation pattern resembling that of a tumour derived mucin. However, it is possible to produce the analogue recombinantly in e.g. *E. coli* or by synthetic means, and subsequently glycosylating the product enzymatically so as to achieve a Tn or S-Tn glycosylation pattern specific for MUC-1 expressed on tumours. Alternatively, the polypeptide could be prepared in a mammalian cell line or an insect cell line, eg. *Drosophila* cells, which lacks the relevant enzyme or by expressing the protein intracellularly (by omitting a secretion signal peptide) where glycosylation does not occur.

## 20 Nucleic acid fragments and vectors of the invention

It will be appreciated from the above disclosure that the analogues can be prepared by means of recombinant gene technology but also by means of chemical synthesis or semisynthesis; the latter two options are especially relevant when the modification consists in coupling to protein carriers (such as KLH, diphtheria toxoid, tetanus toxoid, and BSA) and non-proteinaceous molecules such as carbohydrate polymers and of course also when the modification comprises addition of side chains or side groups to an polypeptide-derived peptide chain.

30 For the purpose of recombinant gene technology, and of course also for the purpose of nucleic acid immunization, nucleic



acid fragments encoding the necessary epitopic regions and analogues are important chemical products. Hence, an important part of the invention pertains to a nucleic acid fragment which encodes an analogue described above of any of the relevant tumour-specific polypeptides, preferably a polypeptide wherein has been introduced a foreign T<sub>H</sub>-cell epitope by means of insertion and/or addition, preferably by means of substitution and/or deletion. The nucleic acid fragments of the invention are either DNA or RNA fragments.

- 10 The nucleic acid fragments of the invention will normally be inserted in suitable vectors to form cloning or expression vectors carrying the nucleic acid fragments of the invention; such novel vectors are also part of the invention. Details concerning the construction of these vectors of the invention
- 15 will be discussed in context of transformed cells and microorganisms below. The vectors can, depending on purpose and type of application, be in the form of plasmids, phages, cosmids, mini-chromosomes, or virus, but also naked DNA which is only expressed transiently in certain cells is an important vector.
- 20 Preferred cloning and expression vectors of the invention are capable of autonomous replication, thereby enabling high copy-numbers for the purposes of high-level expression or high-level replication for subsequent cloning.

The general outline of a vector of the invention comprises the

25 following features in the 5'-3' direction and in operable linkage: a promoter for driving expression of the nucleic acid fragment of the invention, optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a leader peptide enabling secretion of or integration into the membrane of the polypeptide fragment, the nucleic

30 acid fragment of the invention, and a nucleic acid sequence encoding a terminator. When operating with expression vectors in producer strains or cell-lines it is for the purposes of genetic stability of the transformed cell preferred that the

vector when introduced into a host cell is integrated in the host cell genome. In contrast, when working with vectors to be used for effecting *in vivo* expression in an animal (i.e. when using the vector in DNA vaccination) it is for security reasons preferred that the vector is not capable of being integrated in the host cell genome; typically, naked DNA or non-integrating viral vectors are used, the choices of which are well-known to the person skilled in the art.

The vectors of the invention are used to transform host cells to produce the analogue of the invention. Such transformed cells, which are also part of the invention, can be cultured cells or cell lines used for propagation of the nucleic acid fragments and vectors of the invention, or used for recombinant production of the analogues of the invention. Alternatively, the transformed cells can be suitable live vaccine strains wherein the nucleic acid fragment (one single or multiple copies) have been inserted so as to effect secretion or integration into the bacterial membrane or cell-wall of the analogue.

Preferred transformed cells of the invention are microorganisms such as bacteria (such as the species *Escherichia* [e.g. *E.coli*], *Bacillus* [e.g. *Bacillus subtilis*], *Salmonella*, or *Mycobacterium* [preferably non-pathogenic, e.g. *M. bovis* BCG]), yeasts (such as *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*), and protozoans.

Alternatively, the transformed cells are derived from a multicellular organism such as a fungus, an insect cell, a plant cell, or a mammalian cell. Most preferred are cells derived from a human being, cf. the discussion of cell lines and vectors below.

For the purposes of cloning and/or optimized expression it is preferred that the transformed cell is capable of replicating the nucleic acid fragment of the invention. Cells expressing

the nucleic fragment are preferred useful embodiments of the invention; they can be used for small-scale or large-scale preparation of the analogue or, in the case of non-pathogenic bacteria, as vaccine constituents in a live vaccine.

- 5 When producing the analogue of the invention by means of transformed cells, it is convenient, although far from essential, that the expression product is either exported out into the culture medium or carried on the surface of the transformed cell.
- 10 When an effective producer cell has been identified it is preferred, on the basis thereof, to establish a stable cell line which carries the vector of the invention and which expresses the nucleic acid fragment encoding the analogue. Preferably, this stable cell line secretes or carries the
- 15 analogue of the invention, thereby facilitating purification thereof.

In general, plasmid vectors containing replicon and control sequences which are derived from species compatible with the host cell are used in connection with the hosts. The vector

20 ordinarily carries a replication site, as well as marking sequences which are capable of providing phenotypic selection in transformed cells. For example, *E. coli* is typically transformed using pBR322, a plasmid derived from an *E. coli* species (see, e.g., Bolivar et al., 1977). The pBR322 plasmid contains

25 genes for ampicillin and tetracycline resistance and thus provides easy means for identifying transformed cells. The pBR plasmid, or other microbial plasmid or phage must also contain, or be modified to contain, promoters which can be used by the prokaryotic microorganism for expression.

- 30 Those promoters most commonly used in recombinant DNA construction include the B-lactamase (penicillinase) and lactose

promoter systems (Chang et al., 1978; Itakura et al., 1977; Goeddel et al., 1979) and a tryptophan (trp) promoter system (Goeddel et al., 1979; EP-A-0 036 776). While these are the most commonly used, other microbial promoters have been discovered and utilized, and details concerning their nucleotide sequences have been published, enabling a skilled worker to ligate them functionally with plasmid vectors (Siebwenlist et al., 1980). Certain genes from prokaryotes may be expressed efficiently in *E. coli* from their own promoter sequences, precluding the need for addition of another promoter by artificial means.

In addition to prokaryotes, eukaryotic microbes, such as yeast cultures may also be used, and here the promoter should be capable of driving expression. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, or common baker's yeast is the most commonly used among eukaryotic microorganisms, although a number of other strains are commonly available such as *Pichia pastoris*. For expression in *Saccharomyces*, the plasmid YRp7, for example, is commonly used (Stinchcomb et al., 1979; Kingsman et al., 1979; Tschemper et al., 1980). This plasmid already contains the *trp1* gene which provides a selection marker for a mutant strain of yeast lacking the ability to grow in tryptophan for example ATCC No. 44076 or PEP4-1 (Jones, 1977). The presence of the *trp1* lesion as a characteristic of the yeast host cell genome then provides an effective environment for detecting transformation by growth in the absence of tryptophan.

Suitable promoting sequences in yeast vectors include the promoters for 3-phosphoglycerate kinase (Hitzman et al., 1980) or other glycolytic enzymes (Hess et al., 1968; Holland et al., 1978), such as enolase, glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, hexokinase, pyruvate decarboxylase, phosphofructokinase, glucose-6-phosphate isomerase, 3-phosphoglycerate mutase, pyruvate kinase, triosephosphate

isomerase, phosphoglucose isomerase, and glucokinase. In constructing suitable expression plasmids, the termination sequences associated with these genes are also ligated into the expression vector 3' of the sequence desired to be expressed to provide polyadenylation of the mRNA and termination.

Other promoters, which have the additional advantage of transcription controlled by growth conditions are the promoter region for alcohol dehydrogenase 2, isocytochrome C, acid phosphatase, degradative enzymes associated with nitrogen metabolism, and the aforementioned glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase, and enzymes responsible for maltose and galactose utilization. Any plasmid vector containing a yeast-compatible promoter, origin of replication and termination sequences is suitable.

In addition to microorganisms, cultures of cells derived from multicellular organisms may also be used as hosts. In principle, any such cell culture is workable, whether from vertebrate or invertebrate culture. However, interest has been greatest in vertebrate cells, and propagation of vertebrate in culture (tissue culture) has become a routine procedure in recent years (Tissue Culture, 1973). Examples of such useful host cell lines are VERO and HeLa cells, Chinese hamster ovary (CHO) cell lines, and W138, BHK, COS-7 293 and MDCK cell lines.

Expression vectors for such cells ordinarily include (if necessary) an origin of replication, a promoter located in front of the gene to be expressed, along with any necessary ribosome binding sites, RNA splice sites, polyadenylation site, and transcriptional terminator sequences.

For use in mammalian cells, the control functions on the expression vectors are often provided by viral material. For example, commonly used promoters are derived from polyoma, Adenovirus 2, and most frequently Simian Virus 40 (SV40). The  
5 early and late promoters of SV40 virus are particularly useful because both are obtained easily from the virus as a fragment which also contains the SV40 viral origin of replication (Fiers et al., 1978). Smaller or larger SV40 fragments may also be used, provided there is included the approximately 250  
10 bp sequence extending from the *HindIII* site toward the *BglII* site located in the viral origin of replication. Further, it is also possible, and often desirable, to utilize promoter or control sequences normally associated with the desired gene sequence, provided such control sequences are compatible with  
15 the host cell systems.

An origin of replication may be provided either by construction of the vector to include an exogenous origin, such as may be derived from SV40 or other viral (e.g., Polyoma, Adeno, VSV, BPV) or may be provided by the host cell chromosomal  
20 replication mechanism. If the vector is integrated into the host cell chromosome, the latter is often sufficient.

#### Compositions of the invention

The invention also relates to an immunogenic composition which comprises, as an effective immunogenic agent at least one of  
25 the analogues described herein in admixture with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier, vehicle, diluent, or excipient, and optionally an adjuvant, cf also the discussion of these entities in the description of the method of the invention above.

30 Furthermore, the invention also relates to a composition composition for inducing production of antibodies against any

one of the above discussed tumour antigens, the composition comprising

- a nucleic acid fragment or a vector of the invention, and
  - a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable diluent
- 5 and/or vehicle and/or carrier and/or excipient and/or adjuvant.

Formulation and other specifics concerning such compositions are discussed in the relevant section regarding nucleic acid immunisation above.

## 10 EXAMPLE 1

### *Vaccination against PSM*

In the following it will be described how a human autovaccine against PSM can be developed through modification of the molecule by insertion of one or more promiscuous foreign T

15 cell epitopes to reveal a panel of immunogenised PSM molecules.

The constructs will be tested for their ability to induce specific CTL responses against PSM bearing tumour cells. Furthermore, the constructs will be tested for their ability

20 to induce antibodies which are cross-reactive with the native parts of the PSM molecule. Subsequently, in several *in vitro* assays and *in vivo* animal models the efficacy of the different constructs will be evaluated. The induced antibodies will be tested for their ability to activate complement via the clas-

25 sical pathway and to initiate ADCC via Fc-receptors. Finally, the different molecules will be tested in animal models of human prostate cancer.

## Strategy in designing a PSM autovaccine

Briefly, the PSM vaccination plan entails the following experimental tasks

### Design and production of a panel of human PSM mutants

- 5 - Cloning of the PSM sequences from human and rat/mouse.
- Mutational work to generate immunogenized hPSM molecules.
- Expression of wild type and immunogenized hPSM molecules in *E. coli* and/or *Pichia pastoris* and/or mammalian cells and/or insect cells (such as the S<sub>2</sub> cell line).
- 10 - Purification, refolding and characterization of the immunogenized hPSM molecules.

### DNA vaccination against PSM

- = Generation of hPSM DNA vaccination vectors encoding immunogenized hPSM molecules.
- 15 - Testing of hPSM vaccination vectors in *in vitro* and *in vivo* experiments.

### Selection of hPSM candidates

- Immunizations of mice/rabbits.
- ELISA.
- 20 - FACS analysis.
- In case of antibody response: Tumor cell proliferative assay.
- T cell assays.

### Testing of the hPSM mutants *in vivo*

- 25 - Solid tumor/metastasis model in mice.

### Conceptual study: CTL induction by autovaccination

- Construction of immunogenized mouse/rat PSM corresponding to the selected hPSM candidates (e.g. in the form of DNA vaccines).



- Testing the immune response raised by mouse/rat PSM mutants in *in vitro* assays: Immunochemical assays, ELISA, FACS analysis, cellular assays, complement lysis of PSM bearing cells, ADCC assay, CTL activity assay, Tumor cell proliferative assay, T cell presentation assays.
- Testing of the mPSM mutants *in vivo* in a solid tumor/metastasis model in mice.

### Nomenclature of the hPSM constructs

PSM is a type II membrane protein of 750 amino acids, cf. SEQ ID NO: 2 which sets forth the wild-type sequence with the exception that Gly substitutes Trp in position 2 due to the introduction of an *Nco*I site and a Kozak sequence in SEQ ID NO: 1, where ggt substitutes tgg in positions 4-6. However, native PSM (*i.e.* PSM having a Trp in position 2) has also been used for some human PSM based autovaccine constructs.

In PSM, the extracellular part constitutes the 707 C-terminal amino acids, whereas the cytoplasmic domain is predicted to be 19 amino acids long and the transmembrane part of the protein consists of 24 amino acids (aa 20-43).

As starting point for the constructs, the splice variant PSM' has also been used. Our version of this splice variant has the amino acid sequence corresponding to residues 58-750 in SEQ ID NO: 2. For ease of nomenclature, the regions in PSM' are numbered according to the numbering in PSM (meaning that e.g. region 2 consists of amino acids 87-108 in PSM and amino acids 30-51 in PSM'), cf. also the below discussion of the regions.

All the genetic constructs of human PSM are designated hPSM\_\_ (or hPSM'\_\_ if PSM' is used as a starting point), where the first \_\_ is the insertion region used for insertion of P2, and the second \_\_ is the insertion region used for P30.

If P2 or P30 is not present in the protein, the number 0 (zero) is designated. The full length wild type hPSM is designated hPSM0.0 and the wild type hPSM lacking the cytoplasmic and transmembrane parts is designated hPSM $\pm$ 0.0. The 13 planned  
5 immunogenized hPSM genes which all contain one P2 epitope and one P30 epitope will be named hPSM1.1, hPSM6.1, hPSM8.1, hPSM10.1, hPSM1.6, hPSM1.8, hPSM1.10, hPSM1.2, hPSM1.3, hPSM1.5, hPSM2.1, hPSM3.1, hPSM10.3, hPSM6.3, hPSM'10.3, hPSM'6.3, hPSM8.3, hPSM'8.3, and hPSM5.1, cf. details below.

10 In hPSM1.1, both the P2 and the P30 epitopes are inserted in tandem in insertion region no. 1 (the membrane spanning region). Theoretically, this mutant, hPSM1.1, can be considered a very attractive vaccine candidate for induction of antibody  
15 molecule is intact. For induction of CTL responses using nucleic acid immunization, constructs such as hPSM10.3 and hPSM6.3 are considered useful.

In order to facilitate the cloning and mutagenesis procedures, much of the molecular construction work is done using either  
20 the N-terminal (amino acids 1-436) or the C-terminal (amino acids 437-750) part of the hPSM gene as starting material. These two parts of the hPSM gene are designated hPSMI\_\_ and hPSMII\_\_, respectively, where the first \_\_ is the insertion region used for insertion of P2, and the second \_\_ is the  
25 insertion region used for P30. Again, if P2 or P30 is not present in the protein, the number 0 (zero) is designated, and the wild types are named hPSMI0.0 and hPSMII0.0, respectively. A special variant of hPSMI0.0 without the cytoplasmic part of hPSM is designated hPSMI $\pm$ 0.0.

30 Practically, most mutagenesis work is being done using hPSMI0.0 and hPSMII0.0 as starting material.

The expressed hPSM mutant proteins will be designated PROS\_\_\_\_, where the first \_\_\_\_ is the insertion region used for insertion of P2, and the second \_\_\_\_ is the insertion region used for P30. If P2 or P30 is not present in the protein, the number 0 (zero) is designated. The wild type hPSM is designated PROS0.0. PROSII0.0 is the hPSM amino acids 437-750 protein product. HIS tagged proteins are called HIS-PROS\_\_\_\_. As His tags has been used SEQ ID NO: 21 for expression in yeast and bacteria, whereas SEQ ID NO: 23 has been used for expression in mammalian cells.

### Cloning of the human PSM sequence

The LNCaP cell line which originates from a metastatic lesion of human prostatic adenocarcinoma was purchased from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC). mRNA was isolated from this cell line and reverse transcribed using a standard kit in order to obtain cDNA encoding the human PSM sequence. Using different sets of hPSM specific primers, PCR products encoding PSM(437-750) was obtained and further cloned into pUcl9 (plasmid number pMR300) and verified by DNA sequencing. This C-terminal part of wild type PSM is designated hPSM partII (hPSMII0.0).

Similarly, the wild type hPSM partI (hPSMI0.0) has been cloned into pUcl9 using primers for amplifying partI both with (hPSMI0.0) and without (hPSMI+0.0) the transmembrane+cytoplasmic domains. The clones were control sequenced and hPSMI0.0 and hPSMII0.0 were fused using ligation at the EcoRI site. The resulting clones of hPSM0.0 (SEQ ID NO: 2) and hPSM+0.0 have been subcloned into a number of pro- and eucaryotic expression vectors and again sequence verified. The intracellularly expressed form of human PSM (designated hPSM' - amino acids 58-750 of SEQ ID NO: 2) has also been constructed using the cDNA as starting material. This sequence has also been sub-

cloned into mammalian expression vectors and has been used as starting material for some hPSM autovaccine constructs, e.g. hPSM'10.3 and hPSM'6.3.

#### **Cloning of the rat and mouse PSM sequences**

5 Two EST (expressed sequence tag) clones containing murine PSM cDNA sequences (from fetal murine kidney and murine macrophages, respectively) were purchased from American Type Culture Collection (ATCC). Together, these EST's covered the mouse PSM cDNA sequence, and thus both full length mouse PSM (SEQ ID NO:  
10 7 and 8) as well as murine PSM' (SEQ ID NO: 9 and 10) were subcloned into bacterial vectors and mammalian expression vectors. Murine PSM AutoVac constructs have also been made by insertion of P30 into the mouse PSM cDNA.

#### **Expression of wild type hPSM in *E. coli***

15 The C-terminal part (amino acids 437-750) of hPSM, hPSMII0.0, has been cloned into the bacterial expression vector pET28b in order to obtain a product with an N-terminal poly-histidine (HIS) tail which facilitates easy large scale purification and identification with anti-poly-HIS antibodies. The protein  
20 product of poly-HIS tagged hPSMII0.0 (protein product designated HIS-PROSII0.0) was expressed in *E. coli*.

The DNA encoding the truncated wild-type human PSM hPSM+cyt0.0 has also been expressed from pET28b in the *E. coli* strain BL21(DE3) where the expression product is located in inclusion  
25 bodies. SDS-PAGE analysis of bacterial lysate showed a product with the expected migration and Western blotting with rabbit anti-HIS-PROSII0.0 also gave the expected band. Further, N-terminal sequencing of five amino acids of this product eluted from an SDS-PAGE gel gave the expected amino acid sequence.

The wild type hPSM constructs hPSM0.0, hPSM+0.0 (as well as two hPSM mutants, hPSM1.1 and hPSM6.1, see below) have been cloned into different *E. coli* expression vectors in order to enable a more efficient expression and some degree of folding of the recombinant proteins in *E. coli*. The chosen expression systems are:

pMCT6 which generates N-terminally His-tagged versions of the expressed recombinant proteins,

pGH433 which express the recombinant proteins in connection to a 22 amino acid pelB leader sequence which should direct the protein to the periplasmic space of the *E. coli* bacteria, and

pMal-p2 in which recombinant proteins are expressed as C-terminal fusions to maltose binding protein (MBP) containing the natural MBP periplasmic leader sequence. Antibodies against MBP can be used for detection of the fusion proteins and a carbohydrate coupled column can be used for affinity purification of the product.

However, *E. coli* expression experiments of the wild type hPSM proteins from these vectors only showed a fair expression level from pMCT6. The problems of getting periplasmic expression of the wild type hPSM proteins are still not solved at present.

#### **Expression of wild type hPSM in *Pichia pastoris***

Because of the relatively high molecular weight of the PSM protein and its relatively high degree of glycosylation (app. 16% of the molecular weight) and in order to facilitate purification by elimination of the refolding step, it has been decided to implement alternative technology for eukaryotic expression of the recombinant proteins. Several well-charac-

terized eukaryotic expression systems have been evaluated, and for the initial screening of hPSM mutants, the yeast *Pichia pastoris* has been chosen as alternative to *E. coli* expression.

An expression system based on the yeast *Pichia pastoris* has been applied on PSM constructions. The glycosylation pattern of recombinant proteins expressed in this organism is expected to resemble the mammalian glycosylation patterns more than e.g. *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* due to a lesser branched mannosylation of the recombinant protein. It has been shown that mannose receptor-mediated uptake of antigens by dendritic cells results in an approximately 100-fold more efficient presentation to T cells compared to fluid-phase endocytosed uptake. Therefore, mannosylation might play a role for the antigenicity (and especially the ability to induce CTL responses) of the hPSM mutants and other antigens against which a CTL response is desirable.

A strain of *Pichia pastoris* as well as two different expression vectors have been purchased from Invitrogen. The vector pPICZ $\alpha$ A carries a methanol inducible promoter upstream of the polycloning site, whereas the pGAPZ $\alpha$ A vector express proteins constitutively. Both vectors encode the  $\alpha$ -factor secretion signal in order to export the recombinant proteins to the medium. The selection system of these vectors is zeocin resistance. The sequences encoding hPSM0.0, and hPSM+0.0 (as well as one hPSM mutant, hPSM1.1, cf. below) were subcloned into these vectors (in-frame with a C-terminal c-myc identification epitope, SEQ ID NO: 27).

Four *Pichia pastoris* strains (X-33, SMD1168, GS115, and KM71) differing e.g. in their growth requirements were transformed with each of these (linearized) plasmids using electroporation. The transformation procedure was repeated several times with minor changes in order to obtain a large number of zeocin

resistant clones. Expression of wild type hPSM=0.0 (as well as hPSM1.1, see below) was obtained in the *Pichia pastoris* system. The expressed products could be detected in Western blotting of lysates of *Pichia pastoris* transformants both  
5 using an anti-hPSM monoclonal antibody and an anti-c-myc monoclonal antibody as primary. However, the recombinant products were detected intracellularly.

#### **Expression of wild type hPSM in mammalian cells**

An expression system using CHO (chinese hamster ovary) cells  
10 will also be implemented for the final testing and production of selected molecules.

So far, CHO cells have been transfected with wild type hPSM and hPSM1.1 with/without in frame leader sequences in mammalian expression vector pcDNA3.1. Geneticin resistant cells  
15 have been obtained. In COS cells transiently transfected with the same constructs, both hPSM0.0 and hPSM1.1 was detected in Western Blotting of cell pellets using anti-hPSM monoclonal antibody.

#### **Tissue distribution of hPSM**

20 A commercial kit has been purchased in order to determine whether hPSM expression can be detected in various human tissues including prostate, blood and brain. The method is based on a dot blot detection of polyA containing mRNA extracted from 50 different human tissues. Preliminary results  
25 do not indicate hyperexpression of hPSM in tissues such as blood or brain. However, after the priority date of the present application, others have demonstrated the presence of PSM in other tissues, cf. above.

### Design of the hPSM mutants

When designing the mutational work in PSM, some regions of the protein are very important to preserve in the modified constructs, for example potential and identified T cell epitopes, B cell epitopes and disulfide bridge cysteine residues. Therefore, such "forbidden" regions have been identified within the PSM sequence leaving a limited number of "open" regions of 20 amino acids or more available for exchange with the foreign T helper epitopes P2 and/or P30. Per definition, the transmembrane region is also considered an "open" region since autoantibodies directed against this region are irrelevant and elimination of this sequence is believed to enhance the solubility of the mutated PSM proteins but it cannot be excluded that this region contain important CTL epitopes, hence the preservation of the transmembrane region in e.g. hPSM10.3.

According to our expectation that the autovaccine will induce a CTL response, it would be important to identify and preserve potentially subdominant CTL epitopes in the constructs. Two such epitopes are already known from the literature: 1) the peptide comprising PSM amino acids 4-12 (LLHETDSAV) can be presented on the human MHC class I molecule HLA-A2.1 (Tjoa 1996), and 2) the PSM(711-719) (ALFDIESKV) also binds HLA-A2.1 (ref 25). We have also searched the PSM amino acid sequence in order to identify primary anchor residues of HLA class I binding motifs as described by Rammensee et al. (Rammensee, 1995) for the most abundant HLA class I types (HLA-A1, HLA-A2, HLA-A3, HLA-A23, HLA-A24 and HLA-A28), together constituting 80 % of the HLA-A types of the human population. Likewise, potential HLA-B and HLA-C epitopes have been identified and designated as "forbidden" areas.

Because the initial intention was to use C57/black x SJL F1 hybrid mice in case it was decided to use transgenic mice for



testing the PSM autovaccine constructs, certain potential mouse H-2<sup>b</sup> and H-2<sup>s</sup> T helper epitopes have been identified and considered "forbidden" regions (Rammensee 1995).

It is also important to preserve known antibody binding regions in the PSM molecule, because they could be important in the induction of specific anti-PSM autoantibodies. Five such regions have already been described: PSM(63-68), PSM(132-137), PSM(482-487) (WO 94/09820), PSM(716-723) and PSM(1-7) (Murphy, 1996). Using the computer based method of Hopp and Woods for prediction of antigenic determinants, five regions are predicted: PSM(63-69), PSM(183-191), PSM(404-414), PSM(479-486) and PSM(716-723) (Hopp 1983), some of these overlapping the experimentally found B cell epitopes. These regions will also be preserved in the PSM vaccine candidate molecules.

15 The PSM protein contains 4 cysteine residues (amino acid positions 22, 196, 466 and 597) which will be preserved in the immunogenized constructs because of their potential importance in the formation of disulfide bridges.

Based on the above mentioned "forbidden" and "open" regions in the hPSM protein, 10 regions suitable for insertion of foreign T helper epitopes were identified:

Insertion regions in **hPSMI** (from initiation site to EcoRI site, aa 1-437):

Region 1: aa 16-52 in PSM (4 aa preceding TM, TM (24 aa) and 9 aa after TM = 37 aa)

Region 2: aa 87-108 in PSM, aa 30-51 in PSM' (22 aa)

Region 3: aa 210-230 in PSM, aa 153-173 in PSM' (21 aa)

Region 4: aa 269-289 in PSM, aa 212-232 in PSM' (21 aa)

Region 5: aa 298-324 in PSM, aa 241-267 in PSM' (27 aa)

Insertion regions in **hPSMII** (from EcoRI site to termination site, aa 437-750):

5 Region 6: aa 442-465 in PSM, aa 385-408 in PSM' (24 aa)

Region 7: aa 488-514 in PSM, aa 431-457 in PSM' (27 aa)

Region 8: aa 598-630 in PSM, aa 541-573 in PSM' (33 aa)

Region 9: aa 643-662 in PSM, aa 586-605 in PSM' (20 aa)

Region 10: aa 672-699 in PSM, aa 615-642 in PSM' (28 aa)

10 The insertion regions as well as the "forbidden" regions are represented graphically in Fig. 4.

A number of different immunogenized PSM constructs will be made by substitution of a segment of amino acids from two of the above listed insertion regions with P2 or P30. Each mutant  
15 protein will thus contain both P2 and P30, although such constructions are only exemplary - single-mutants are also within the scope of the present invention. Experimentally, the mutations will be made in clones of hPSMI and hPSMII cDNA respectively, and the two mutated parts will subsequently be  
20 combined by ligation (at the EcoRI site). The P2 and P30 epitopes have initially been inserted into insertion regions 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 8 and 10 in order to create the mutants.

The sequences of P2 and P30 are:

P2: QYIKANSKFIGITEL (SEQ ID NO: 12, 15 aa), in this case encoded by the nucleotide sequence cag tac atc aaa gct aac tcc aaa ttc atc ggt atc acc **gag ctg** (SEQ ID NO: 11, 45 nucleotides), where the sequence in boldface is a *SacI* site. Other  
 5 codon choices may occur, depending on choice of cloning vector and expression system

P30: FNNFTVSFWLRVPKVSASHLE (SEQ ID NO: 14, 21 aa), in this case encoded by the nucleotide sequence ttc aac aac ttc acc gta **agc ttc** tgg ctg cgt gtt ccg aaa gtt agc **gCT AGC** cac **ctg**  
 10 gaa (SEQ ID NO: 13, 63 nucleotides), where boldface indicates an *HindIII* site, single underlining indicates an *Eco47III* site, capital letters indicates a *BstNI* site, and double underlining indicates an *NheI* site.

The following table summarizes the human PSM constructs used  
 15 herein:

	Construct	P2 position in protein	P30 position in protein
	hPSM0.0	÷	÷
	hPSM±0.0	÷	÷
	hPSM'0.0	÷	÷
20	hPSM1.1	17-31	32-52
	hPSM6.1	448-462	21-41
	hPSM8.1	606-620	21-41
	hPSM10.1	674-688	21-41
	hPSM1.6	24-38	443-463
25	hPSM1.8	24-38	607-627
	hPSM1.10	24-38	673-693
	hPSM1.2	24-38	87-107
	hPSM1.3	24-38	210-230
	hPSM1.5	24-38	301-321
30	hPSM2.1	91-105	21-41
	hPSM3.1	213-227	21-41
	hPSM5.1	305-319	21-41

Construct	P2 position in protein	P30 position in protein
hPSM8.0	606-620	+
hPSM10.0	674-688	+
hPSM0.1	÷	21-41
hPSM1.0	24-38	+
5 hPSM6.3	448-462	210-230
hPSM8.3	606-620	210-230
hPSM10.3	674-688	210-230
hPSM' 6.3	391-405	153-173
hPSM' 8.3	549-563	153-173
10 hPSM' 10.3	617-631	153-173

#### Molecular constructions of the hPSM mutants

Mutations to insert P2 and P30 encoding sequences have been performed using both hPSMI0.0 and hPSMII0.0 as starting material.

- 15 In order to generate a majority of the hPSM mutants, P2 and P30 were initially inserted in hPSMI0.0 at insertion position 1. The resulting material (hPSMI1.0 and hPSMI0.1, respectively) was subsequently used as starting material for mutagenesis to insert P2 and P30 at positions 2,3 and 5 and for
- 20 ligation with epitope mutated hPSMII. hPSMI1.0 was constructed using SOE (single overlap extension) PCR and subsequently sequence verified. hPSMI0.1 was constructed using the "Quick Change" technique and subsequently sequence verified.

- The P2 epitope was inserted into positions 2, 3 and 5 of
- 25 hPSMI1.0 using SOE-PCR to create hPSMI1.2, hPSMI1.3 and hPSMI1.5. These constructions were combined with hPSMII0.0 to create hPSM1.2, hPSM1.3 and hPSM1.5.

hPSMI2.1, hPSMI3.1 and hPSMI5.1 were constructed by SOE PCR using hPSMI0.1 as starting material. This material has been assembled with hSPMII0.0 by ligation at the EcoRI site in order to create the full length mutants hPSM2.1, hPSM3.1 and  
5 hPSM5.1.

The P2 epitope was inserted at three different positions of hPSMII0.0 in order to create hPSMII6.0, hPSMII8.0 and hPSMII10.0 using the "Quick Change" technique, and these clones were subsequently sequence verified.

10 Subsequently, hPSMI0.1 was ligated with hPSMII6.0, hPSMII8.0 and hPSMII10.0 to obtain hPSM6.1, hPSM8.1 and hPSM10.1, and the clones were sequence verified.

Insertion of the P30 epitope in hPSMII is presently being done to generate hPSMII0.6, hPSMII0.8 and hPSMII0.10 using SOE PCR.

15 hPSM1.1 was constructed using two two-step PCR mutations followed by ligation in a HindIII site within the epitope sequence. The full length construct is sequence verified.

hPSM10.3, hPSM'10.3, and hPSM6.3 have been constructed using SOE-PCR. Several other hPSM variants with both P2 and P30  
20 inserted in the extracellular part of hPSM are currently being constructed (hPSM'6.3, hPSM8.3, hPSM'8.3).

In addition to the originally contemplated mutants each containing both P2 and P30, four mutants which only contain a single foreign epitope have been constructed and sequence  
25 verified: hPSM1.0, hPSM8.0, hPSM10.0 and hPSM0.1.

**Expression of hPSM mutants in *E. coli***

In small-scale experiments, seven hPSM mutants, hPSM1.1, hPSM6.1, hPSM8.1, hPSM10.1, hPSM2.1, hPSM3.1 and hPSM5.1 were expressed from pET28b in the *E. coli* strain BL21(DE3), and 5 IPTG inducible products of the expected size were identified on Coomassie Blue stained SDS-PAGE gels. However, a product of hPSM1.1 was not detectable. The expression levels of these hPSM mutants were very low compared to the product of the wild type construct hPSM0.0. At this point, a fair expression 10 level of the hPSM mutants using the pET system in *E. coli* seems impossible, and the use of other *E. coli* expression systems and/or other host organisms is thus necessary.

As mentioned above, hPSM6.1 and hPSM1.1 have been subcloned into different *E. coli* expression vectors in order to generate

- 15 - N-terminally His-tagged versions of the expressed recombinant proteins using vector pMCT6,
- versions of the proteins expressed with the pelB leader sequence which directs the protein to the periplasmic space of the *E. coli* bacteria using vector pGH433, and
- 20 - versions of the recombinant proteins expressed as a C-terminal fusion protein to maltose binding protein (MBP) using vector pMal-p2.

So far, a sufficient expression level from any of these constructs has not been obtained.

- 25 Since hPSM0.0 is fairly expressed in *E. coli* while a similar expression level of full length hPSM0.0 or the hPSM mutants has not been observed, it is possible that presence of the cytoplasmic part of the hPSM molecule can somehow "inhibit" the expression of the full-length hPSM constructs in *E. coli*.
- 30 To test this hypothesis, we initially made two genetic con-

structs of hPSM1.1 and hPSM0.1 without cytoplasmic domains. However, in *E.coli* expression experiments there were only weak expression of these +cyt gene products.

#### **Expression of hPSM mutants in *Pichia pastoris***

5 In order to express the hPSM1.1 mutant protein from the yeast *Pichia pastoris*, the hPSM1.1 sequence has been subcloned (in-frame with a C-terminal c-myc identification epitope, SEQ ID NO: 27) into the two different expression vectors pPICZαA and pGAPZαA, and the sequences have been verified. hPSM1.1 expres-  
10 sion (as well as hPSM+0.0, see above) was detected intracellularly in the *Pichia pastoris* transformants.

#### **Expression of hPSM mutants in mammalian cells**

As mentioned above, hPSM1.1 has been subcloned into the mammalian expression vectors pcDNA3.1(+) and pZeoSV2 and these  
15 constructs (and others) could be used for expression in e.g. CHO cells. Transient expression of hPSM1.1 as well as hPSM0.0 has been obtained in COS cells as verified by Western blotting.

#### **DNA vaccination**

20 DNA vaccination would, if effective, be very well suited for the PSM autovaccine - especially because this administration form has been shown to promote both CTL mediated immune reactions and antibody production. Therefore, it was the intention to perform a parallel study with the aim of investigating the  
25 effect of DNA-vaccination of mice with appropriate vectors encoding immunogenized mouse ubiquitin and/or mouse TNFα. DNA vaccination with hPSM (and/or mutants) encoding naked DNA will also be done.

### **Feasibility study using immunogenized ubiquitin for DNA vaccination**

A feasibility study stating the effect of DNA vaccination with an immunogenized self protein was performed using ubiquitin with an inserted T helper epitope from ovalbumin (UbioVA) as a model protein. Sequences encoding UbioVA as well as wild type ubiquitin were subcloned into the mammalian expression vector pcDNA3.1(-).

Groups of 5 BALB/c mice were immunized with 40 µg pcDNA-UbioVA or pcDNA-ubiquitin construct either intramuscularly in the quadriceps or intradermally. An control control group of received UbioVA protein in complete Freund's adjuvant. Three and six weeks later, the immunizations were repeated with the only difference that the UbioVA protein was emulsified in incomplete Freund's adjuvant.

The mice were bled regularly and the anti-ubiquitin antibody titers were determined. In the DNA vaccinated UbioVA groups, only very weak anti-ubiquitin antibody titers were obtained. Subsequently, all groups were boosted with UbioVA protein in incomplete Freund's adjuvant and bled in order to determine whether DNA vaccination with UbioVA (and not ubiquitin) could potentiate the antibody response towards UbioVA protein. The results of this experiment showed that there was no significant difference between the UbioVA groups and the control groups, all mice developed strong anti-ubiquitin antibodies upon this single UbioVA/FIA boost.

### **DNA vaccination using hPSM constructs**

Currently, various DNA vaccination experiments are ongoing using hPSM constructs. Various human PSM wildtype and AutoVac constructs (such as e.g. hPSM0.0, hPSM+0.0, hPSM'0.0, hPSM1.1,



hPSM10.3) have been subcloned into DNA vaccination vectors (such as pcDNA3.1(+), pcDNA3.1(-), pVAX and pZecSV2). In some of the constructions, different leader sequences (such as the CD11a, tPA, and IL-5 leader sequences; SEQ ID NOs: 23, 25, and 5 31, respectively) have been included directly N-terminally and in-frame to allow secretion of the expressed hPSM proteins *in vivo*. All the constructions in DNA vaccination vectors have been verified by DNA sequencing and *in vitro* translation.

Mice of different strains (such as Balb/cA, Balb/cJ, DBA/2 and 10 A/J) have been injected with the above described hPSM DNA vaccines either intradermally or intramuscularly and boosted several times using the same constructs.

Serum samples have been obtained during the immunisation period and stored at -20°C. These samples will be analysed for 15 presence of antibodies reactive with wild type hPSM.

Also, assays to monitor CTL and T helper proliferative responses in these mice are being established.

Preliminary results suggest that induction of both CTL as well as antibody responses against PSM can be accomplished.

## 20 **Purification/characterization of HIS-tagged hPSM(437-750)** **(HIS-PROSII0.0)**

HIS-tagged wild type hPSMII (HIS-PROSII0.0) was expressed from pET28b, and solubilized inclusion bodies were applied to a gel filtration FPLC column and eluted in a buffer containing 8 M 25 urea. Fractions predominantly containing hPSMII were subjected to various refolding conditions to optimize the procedure. Solubilized product dialyzed against a Tris buffer was estimated to be more than 90 % pure using silver-stained SDS-PAGE.

Rabbits were immunized with the purified HIS-PROSII0.0 in order to use the resulting antiserum for later detection and possibly affinity purification of the hPSM mutants.

#### **Purification/characterization of soluble hPSM (PROS÷0.0)**

5 Wild type hPSM lacking the cytoplasmic and transmembrane parts, PROS÷0.0, has been expressed in the *E. coli* strain BL21(DE3) upon induction with IPTG and could be detected in inclusion bodies. SDS-PAGE of this bacterial lysate followed by Western blotting with rabbit anti-HIS-PROSII0.0 showed a  
10 product with the expected migration. N-terminal sequencing of the first five amino acids of this product eluted from an SDS-PAGE gel showed the expected sequence corresponding to human PSM. The product was subjected to a large series of solubilization and refolding experiments. A product which stay  
15 in solution can be obtained in a Tris buffer without denaturant or reductant, but SDS-PAGE analysis reveals that the material probably forms large aggregates. Mice and rabbits have been immunized with this material in order to get antibody against hPSM e.g. for analytical purposes - the antisera  
20 did not react with LNCap hPSM.

A batch of washed *E. coli* inclusion bodies of PROS÷0.0 has been prepared for immunization of rabbits to generate a polyclonal antiserum against PSM. Approximately 50% of the protein content in the wet pelleted material contained was  
25 PROS÷0.0. The antisera did not react with LNCap hPSM in Western blotting.

#### **Preparation of KLH-conjugated hPSM peptides for immunization**

Three 15-mer peptides were synthesized in order to make an immunogenic conjugate of known hPSM B cell epitopes with an  
30 immunological carrier molecule to obtain a polyclonal anti-

serum which is able to recognize hPSM. These peptides contain the PSM B cell epitope plus 5-6 flanking PSM amino acids in each end.

The peptides were made by automatic synthesis, HPLC purified and control-sequenced using Edman degradation.

A chemically linked conjugate was prepared by cross-linking the B cell epitope containing hPSM peptides KLH using a standard 1-step procedure with glutaraldehyde as the cross-linking agent.

#### **Synthesis of P2 and P30 peptides with flanking hPSM sequences**

Six peptides have been designed which correspond to the P2 and P30 epitopes with 5 flanking hPSM amino acids in each end. The flanking amino acids correspond to the epitope insertion sites 6, 8 and 10. The peptides will be used in e.g. T cell proliferation assays, but also for other purposes such as ELISA or other *in vitro* assays. The peptide sequences are:

PSMpep007            P2 inserted in hPSM insertion position 6  
QERGVQYIKANSKFIGITELRVDCT (SEQ ID NO: 15)

20 PSMpep008            P2 inserted in hPSM insertion position 8  
AVVLRQYIKANSKFIGITELEMKTY (SEQ ID NO: 16)

PSMpep009            P2 inserted in hPSM insertion position 10  
MFLERQYIKANSKFIGITELHVIYA (SEQ ID NO: 17)

25 PSMpep010            P30 inserted in hPSM insertion position 6  
NSRLLENNFTVSEFWLRVPKVSASHLEVDCTP (SEQ ID NO: 18)

PSMpep011            P30 inserted in hPSM insertion position 8  
VVLRRKNNFTVSEFWLRVPKVSASHLESFDSL (SEQ ID NO: 19)

PSMpep012            P30 inserted in hPSM insertion position 10  
LMFLEFNNFTVSEFWLRVPKVSASHLEPSSHN (SEQ ID NO: 20)

The P2 and P30 epitopes are underlined. The peptides were made by automatic synthesis and subjected to the process of HPLC purification followed by control-sequencing using Edman degradation.

### **Immunogenicity assays**

Different experimental setups have been initiated in order to produce materials and establish immunogenicity assays for the future testing of and selection between the mutated PSM constructs.

### **Generation of polyclonal rabbit anti-HIS-PROSII0.0 and anti-KLH-PSM-peptide conjugate antisera**

- 15 Two rabbits were immunized with purified HIS-PROSII0.0, the HIS-tagged C-terminal part of the hPSM protein (amino acids 437-750) emulsified 1:1 with complete Freund's adjuvant and boosted twice (at days 28 and 55) with the same antigen emulsified in incomplete Freund's adjuvant.
- 20 Two rabbits were immunized with a cocktail consisting of the KLH-PSM peptide conjugate plus each of the three free peptides. These three peptides each contain a previously defined B cell epitope of hPSM. The cocktail was emulsified 1:1 with complete Freund's adjuvant. The rabbits were boosted twice (at
- 25 days 28 and 55) with the same antigen emulsified in incomplete Freund's adjuvant.

Cross-reactivity between anti-HIS-PROSII0.0 and PSMpep005 and cross-reactivity between anti-KLH-PSM peptide conjugate plus peptides and HIS-PROSII0.0 was demonstrated in ELISA assays.

The anti-HIS-PROSII0.0 antibody has the ability to recognize native hPSM in lysates of LNCaP cells in Western blotting.

#### **Immunization of mice with retrovirally expressed hPSM0.0**

At this stage of the PSM project, a serious obstacle is still  
5 the lack of antibodies which are able to recognize correctly folded native hPSM. Therefore, an immunization experiment using retrovirally expressed hPSM0.0 was performed.

Six groups of Balb/c mice were immunized with either: 1) mitomycin C treated BALB/c fibrosarcoma cells (79.24.H8)  
10 transduced with hPSM0.0 cDNA (CMV-Koz-hPSM), 2) mitomycin C treated BALB/c fibrosarcoma cells (79.24.H8), transduced with empty vector (CMVBipep), 3) packaging cells (BOSC) transfected with hPSM0.0 cDNA (CMV-Koz-hPSM), 4) packaging cells (BOSC) transfected with empty vector (CMVBipep), 5) retrovirus stock  
15 expressing hPSM0.0 cDNA (CMV-Koz-hPSM) or 6) retrovirus stock, empty vector (CMVBipep).

At several time points, the mice were bled and the sera obtained tested for reactivity in ELISA for reactivity against HIS-PROSII0.0. Unfortunately, none of the mice developed  
20 antibodies able to specifically recognize the HIS-PROSII0.0 preparation.

#### **Establishment of an anti-hPSM ELISA**

Purified HIS-PROSII0.0 was used for coating polystyrene microtitre plates (Maxisorp) for the purpose of establishing an  
25 ELISA assay for testing e.g. hybridoma supernatants or mouse and rabbit antisera. Sera from BALB/c mice immunized with the same preparation of HIS-PROSII0.0 were reactive with the immobilized HIS-PROSII0.0 at 0.5 ug per well using horse

radish peroxidase labelled rabbit anti-mouse Ig as secondary antibody.

As mentioned above, the ability of an antiserum raised in rabbits against KLH-PSMpep004-PSMpep005-PSMpep006 conjugate  
5 mixed with the free peptides to react with immobilized HIS-FROSII0.0 was demonstrated using this ELISA assay.

Using AquaBind® microtitre plates (cf. the disclosure in WO 94/03530 describing i.a. microtitre surfaces coated with tresyl-activated dextran which are now marketed under the  
10 registered trademark AquaBind), an ELISA using immobilized PSM peptides (PSMpep004, PSMpep005 and PSMpep006) was established. AquaBind® plates coated with these peptides could detect a rabbit antiserum raised against the same preparation of anti-  
15 gen. As mentioned above, rabbit anti-HIS-FROSII0.0 could be detected on AquaBind® plates coated with PSMpep005.

#### **Establishment of an anti-hPSM Western blot using LNCaP cells and monoclonal antibody 7E11C5**

7E11C5 B cell hybridomas which secrete mouse IgG2a monoclonal antibody against an intracellular epitope of human PSM was  
20 purchased from ATCC. Culture supernatant from approximately 90% dead cells was collected and used in Western blotting for detection of human PSM in both membrane enriched preparations of LNCaP cells as well as in LNCaP cell lysates. This antibody was purified using protein G columns, and its reactivity with  
25 LNCaP in Western blotting verified.

#### **Establishment of a FACS method to detect hPSM on LNCaP cells**

We have established two mutually independent FACS methods to detect hPSM on LNCaP cells. Several problems are being addressed: The LNCaP cells grow very slow and in irregular

clumps, and therefore the method to prepare single cell suspensions should be optimized. Secondly, the epitope recognized by the mAb 7E11C5 is in the literature defined to be in the cytoplasmic domain of hPSM. Therefore, the method to fix and permeabilize the cells has been developed. For this purpose, protein G purified 7E11C5 antibody has been FITC conjugated and can thus be used without secondary antibody in FACS analysis.

Also, a FACS method using the anti-hPSM monoclonal antibody J591 which recognizes an epitope on the extracellular part of hPSM, has been established. The antibody was obtained from BZL Biologicals and FITC conjugated and subsequently used for FACS analysis and sortings of e.g. LNCaP cells and hPSM transfectants (see below).

#### 15 Establishing a cytotoxicity assay

A method to purify dendritic cells from mouse bone marrow has been implemented. Using model proteins, immunization of mice with dendritic cells pulsed with model class I peptides and protein has been optimized. Also, mice have been immunized with a model protein ( $\beta$ -galactosidase) formulated in the form of ISCOMS. T-cells purified from immunized mice have been *in vitro* restimulated with different forms of the corresponding antigens. The ability of these restimulated CTLs to lyse different kinds of target cells (including pulsed dendritic cells as well as transfectants expressing retrovirally expressed cytosolic class I peptide) was subsequently measured. Two different *in vitro* assays measuring CTL activity have been established, using either chromium release or and DNA fragmentation (JAM method) as measures of cytotoxicity. Very nice results were obtained with the  $\beta$ -galactosidase model protein and with various combinations of MHC class I and class II binding model peptides.

**Establishment of tools to study breaking of autotolerance towards mouse PSM in mice.**

It is the intention to study whether autotolerance to mouse PSM can be broken in mice by immunisation and/or DNA vaccination against murine PSM using murine PSM AutoVac molecules.

As mentioned above, cDNA encoding murine PSM (mPSM) has been obtained and DNA sequenced. Four mPSM variant molecules are being generated by insertion of P30 at well-defined sites in either full length mPSM or mPSM'. The constructs are as follows:

	mPSM amino acids substituted with P30	Length of molecule (no. of amino acids)
mPSM0.0	+	752
mPSM'0.0	+	694
mPSMX	255-271 (of SEQ ID NO: 8)	756
mPSMY	689-700 (of SEQ ID NO: 8)	760
15 mPSM'X	197-213 (of SEQ ID NO: 10)	698
mPSM'Y	631-642 (of SEQ ID NO: 10)	702

Initially, the mPSM wild type and analogue molecules are subcloned into DNA vaccination vectors and used for DNA vaccination of mice.

20 It is the intention to analyse immune responses such as CTL responses and tumor elimination in the mice. For this, murine tumor cell lines will be transfected with wild type murine PSM (fused in-frame with an identification tag, e.g. the c-myc epitope, SEQ ID NO: 27, for detection purposes).



**in vivo PSM tumor models****Mouse T cell proliferation assays with P2 and P30**

A series of T cell proliferation experiments has been conducted in order to establish the T cell immunogenicity of P2 and P30 peptides in various mouse strains (BALB/cA (H-2<sup>d</sup>), C3H/Hen (H-2<sup>k</sup>), DBA/1 (H-2<sup>q</sup>) and C57BL/6 (H-2<sup>b</sup>)). It is well known that these epitopes are promiscuous in humans, but the T cell promiscuity also needed to be confirmed in mice using M&Es experimental setup. It was thus shown that P30 is T cell immunogenic in the BALB/cA and C57BL/6 strains whereas neither P2 or P30 were shown to be T cell immunogenic in the C3H/Hen strain. In DBA/1, T cells could be raised against P2.

**Generation of hPSM expressing mouse tumor cells**

For the use of a hPSM specific tumor model in mice as well as for the use in tumor cell proliferative assays, a panel of hPSM expressing mouse tumor cells are being established.

One approach is to generate these cell lines by transducing the murine tumor cell lines with retroviral vectors encoding the full-length wild type hPSM0.0 cDNA.

Three different constructs encoding full length wild type cDNA encoding human PSM inserted into the polycloning site of the retroviral vector CMVBipep was constructed, two of these containing a short Kozak sequence upstream of the start codon.

These constructs were transduced into three different mouse tumor cell lines: P815 (mastocytoma, H-2<sup>d</sup>), B16-F10 (melanoma, H-2<sup>b</sup>) and 79.24.H8 (fibrosarcoma, H-2<sup>d</sup>) using the BOSC packaging cell line. Geneticin resistant clones have been obtained for all three cell types, and it was verified in PCR analysis

on genomic DNA template that the retroviral constructs were integrated in the host cells. It has not yet been possible to detect an expressed PSM gene product in Western blot or FACS analysis using the 7E11C5 monoclonal antibody.

- 5 Two stable mouse tumor cell lines harboring membrane bound wild type human PSM have been established by transfection. This was done using h.PSM0.0 cDNA subcloned in the mammalian expression vector pcDNA3.1(+) under the control of the CMV promoter and containing a Kozak sequence upstream of the start  
10 codon.

- The resulting plasmid was transfected into two different mouse tumor cell lines: 79.24.H8 (fibrosarcoma, Balb/c derived) and SalN (fibrosarcoma, A/J derived). Geneticin resistant cultures were obtained and subjected to Western blotting and FACS  
15 analysis using the J591 and 7E11C5 anti-hPSM monoclonal antibodies. Using the J591 antibody, the cells were FACS sorted several rounds until a hPSM positive population was obtained. hPSM expression was again verified by intracellular FACS staining using the 7E11C5 antibody. It was also checked by  
20 FACS analysis that the MHC class I expression levels were the same level as the levels of the parental cell lines.

- Cultures of 79.24.H8 and SalN cell lines expressing hPSM were cloned by limiting dilution. Several clones were obtained and tested for different hPSM expression levels by FACS analysis  
25 using the anti-hPSM monoclonal antibody J591.

79.24.H8 cells expressing hPSM were transfected with the gene encoding B7.1 for use in e.g. *in vitro* assays to monitor hPSM specific CTL responses and/or interferon-gamma release. The cells were FACS sorted one time using an anti-B7.1 antiserum.

**Establishment of a hPSM specific tumor model in mice**

It has been decided to establish at least two *in vivo* tumor models in immune competent mice in order to determine the anti-tumor effect of antibodies raised in mice against the immunogenized hPSM molecules. This will hopefully be done by injecting syngeneic mouse tumor cell lines modified to express wild type hPSM on the surface membrane. Cells which form solid tumors and/or cells which are known to metastasize will be used. Cell lines which can be implanted in syngeneic mice without being rejected due to the presence of the foreign hPSM molecule will be used in the model. The ability of the hPSM vaccines to eliminate such tumor cells will be used for the selection of the hPSM vaccine candidates.

To evaluate the growth of SalN cells transfected with the full length human PSM, different doses ( $2 \times 10^6$  and  $5 \times 10^6$ ) of the hPSM transfected SalN cells (S-PSM, sorted 5 times) were injected subcutaneously at the lower right flank of groups of A/J mice. However, solid tumors did not establish. Subsequently, three clones of S-PSM cells with different expression level of hPSM were injected subcutaneously in 3 groups of A/J mice at a dose of  $10^7$  cells/mouse. The sizes of the established tumors were measured with a caliber measuring two different diameters which were multiplied to give the tumor size in  $\text{mm}^3$ . These values were compared for the three groups. Within 3-6 days, all mice developed a solid tumor-like structure which disappeared again approximately by day 15. This is likely to be due to the presence of human PSM on the tumor cell surfaces, although it has not yet been verified. SalN cells transfected only with the pcDNA3.1 vector continued to grow as solid tumors in mice.

A similar picture was observed in mice injected with  $10^6$ ,  $5 \times 10^6$ , or  $10^7$  79.24.H8 cells transfected with hPSM and sorted

several rounds for hPSM expression. These cells (termed 79-PSM) also did not establish as tumors in Balb/c nor DBA/2 mice. However, when a clone of hPSM transfected 79.24.H8 cells, 79-PSM.3, was injected into Balb/c or DBA/2 mice, the  
5 mice developed solid tumor-like structures which disappeared again by day 10-20. Vector-transfected 79.24.H8 continued to grow in Balb/c mice.

It still remains to be evaluated if these "tumors" are treatable, or if a better tumor model can be established based on  
10 the described S-PSM and 79-PSM cell lines and clones.

### Conclusions

In the molecular construction work we have succeeded in cloning of the human PSM gene and obtaining the mouse PSM cDNA. An array of fully sequenced immunogenized hPSM autovaccine  
15 constructs have been produced. The hPSM mutants as well as different wild type hPSM molecules have been expressed in *E. coli*, and it was found and verified that the expression level in *E. coli* is very low. Polyclonal antibodies against the C-terminal half of hPSM have been induced in rabbits. Efforts  
20 have been made in order to implement different expression tags (His-tag and maltose binding protein fusion) as well as expression systems alternative to *E. coli* inclusion bodies. Recombinant wild type and/or autovaccine hPSM has been detected in transfected *Pichia pastoris* and mammalian cells.  
25 Useful considerations regarding the DNA vaccine technology have been made, and a preliminary feasibility study was performed. DNA vaccination experiments with hPSM autovaccine molecules are ongoing and show promising preliminary results. Different *in vitro* assays useful for testing of and selection  
30 between the mutated PSM constructs is established, including immunochemical assays and FACS analysis. Mouse tumor cells have been stably transfected with full length wild type hPSM

and FACS sorted for hPSM surface expression. Clones of these cell lines have been obtained. *In vivo* xenogenic tumor models in mice is being evaluated using these hPSM bearing syngeneic mouse tumor cells. An array of T cell proliferation assays  
5 have been performed in order to select the mouse strains for the tumour models. CTL assays are being optimized, and convincing results with model antigens have been obtained using different immunization methods and assay conditions. Furthermore, tools necessary to study breaking of tolerance to mouse  
10 PSM by immunization against mouse PSM autovaccines are being established.

## EXAMPLE 2

### *Production of a Her2 autovaccine*

A human autovaccine against Her2 can be developed through  
15 modification of the molecule by insertion of one or more promiscuous foreign T cell epitopes to reveal a panel of immunogenised Her2 molecules. These modified proteins will be tested for their ability to induce antibodies which are cross-reactive with the native parts of the Her2 molecule. Subse-  
20 quently, in several *in vitro* assays and *in vivo* animal models, the efficacy of the different constructs (as may be the case with the DNA vaccination) and modified proteins will be evaluated. The induction of specific CTL responses against Her2 bearing tumour cells will be analysed. Also, the induced  
25 antibodies will be tested for their ability to activate complement via the classical pathway and to initiate ADCC via Fc-receptors. Finally, the different modified molecules will be tested in animal models of human breast cancer to examine their effects on the treatment of tumours.

Immunogenic rat and human molecules will be constructed with promiscuous T-cell epitopes at different positions in the molecule.

During vaccination against the entire extracellular domain of Her2 there is a possibility of some degree of cross reaction of the antibodies with other EGFr receptors since some of these receptors are homologous by up to 40-46% in the extracellular domains. Therefore it is planned that the conserved regions of Her2 would be disrupted by inserting foreign T cell epitopes at least in some of the modified proteins (see below for details).

Regions of Her2 that may potentially be CTL or B-cell epitopes are avoided in designing of constructs are seen in Fig. 3. The rationale for using these positions is as follows:

The human Her2 sequence can be divided into a number of domains based solely on the primary structure of the protein.

Extracellular (receptor) part:

- 1-173: Domain I (N-terminal domain of mature polypeptide).
- 174-323: Domain II (Cysteine rich domain, 24 cysteine residues).
- 324-483: Domain III (ligand binding domain in the homologous EGF receptor).
- 484-623: Domain IV (Cysteine rich domain, 20 cysteine residues).
- 624-654: Transmembrane domain (TM residues from 654 - 675).

Intracellular (kinase) part:

655-1010: Tyrosine kinase domain (core TK domain from 725 - 992).

1011-1235: C-terminal domain.

5 Selection of sites in the amino acid sequence of HER2 to be displaced by either the P2 or P30 human T helper epitopes has been done considering the following parameters (loosely prioritised):

1. Known and predicted CTL epitopes
- 10 2. Homology to related receptors (EGFR in particular)
3. Conservation of cysteine residues
4. Predicted loop,  $\alpha$ -helix and  $\beta$ -sheet structures
5. Potential N-glycosylation sites
6. Prediction of exposed and buried amino acid residues
- 15 7. Domain organisation

The CTL epitopes appear to be clustered in domain I, domain III, the TM domain and in two or three "hot spots" in the TK domain. According to the invention, these should be largely conserved.

20 Regions with a high degree of homology with other receptors are likely to be structurally important for the "overall" tertiary structure of Her2, and hence for antibody recognition, whereas regions with low homology possibly can be exchanged with only local alterations of the structure as the  
25 consequence.

Cysteine residues are often involved in intramolecular disulphide bridge formation and are thus crucial for the tertiary structure and should preferably not be changed.

Regions predicted to form  $\alpha$ -helix or  $\beta$ -sheet structures should preferably be avoided as insertion points of foreign epitopes, as these regions are probably important for the folding of the protein.

- 5 Potential N-glycosylation sites should preferably also be conserved because mannosylation of the protein (for example by expression in yeast) is desired, cf. the presence of mannose receptors on APCs.

- Regions predicted (by their hydrophobic properties) to be  
10 interior in the molecule preferably should be conserved as these could be involved in the folding. In contrast, solvent exposed regions could serve as candidate positions for insertion of the model  $T_H$  epitopes P2 and P30.

- Finally, the domain organisation of the protein has also been  
15 taken into consideration because of its relevance for protein structure and function.

- The focus of the strategy has been to conserve the structure of the extracellular part of Her2 as much as possible, because this is the part of the protein which is relevant as target  
20 for neutralising antibodies. By contrast, the intracellular part of native membrane bound Her2 on the surface of cancer cells is inaccessible for the humoral immune system.

- Hence, only the presence of CTL epitopes gives reason to include this part in a vaccine. It is therefore obvious to  
25 place one or more epitopes here. If it turns out that it is impossible to express the full length Her22 molecule in *E. coli* or in yeast, the intracellular part could be truncated after the first CTL epitope "hot spot" (around position 800). Additional CTL epitopes can hereafter be added to the C-terminal end of the truncated molecule.  
30



The transmembrane region probably is an independent folding unit and substitution of this with T<sub>H</sub> epitopes such as P2 or P30 will probably not affect the HER2 structure and folding. In addition, the TM domain might cause great problems for the expression in yeast and coli and should in any case be substituted. Thus, an epitope should preferably be placed in this domain in all constructions (perhaps leaving it intact in 1 construction as it contains several CTL epitopes and because it is somehow involved in transmission of signals upon ligand binding).

The extracellular domain could principally be kept intact by placing P2 and P30 in the intracellular and transmembrane domains, thereby maximising the number of potential B-cell epitopes and interfering as little as possible with the structure. However, the high degree of homology to EGFR and Her-3 and Her-4 make a risk for cross reactivity to these receptors which may (or may not) be undesirable. In addition, some monoclonal antibodies have been described which function as agonists for the receptor (perhaps by stimulating heterodimerisation or ligand binding) and increase tumour size, in vivo. Positions in the extracellular domain have therefore been selected which thereby hopefully will reduce these risks.

This selection has involved all of the before mentioned parameters and has been based on two different assumptions: (i) Insertion in non-conserved (with respect to related receptors) regions will help to maintain the tertiary structure and might reduce unwanted activation by antibodies. (ii) Insertion in the well conserved regions can alter the structure, but might at the same time reduce the risk of cross reactivity by destroying the most related sequences. Both assumptions are speculative, but as it is very difficult to predict the effect

of placing an epitope in any position of the protein some of these positions have been included in the constructions.

It has been speculated that it could be an advantage to remove the two cysteine rich domains completely. These are predicted to form solvent exposed loop structures and could form independent folding units perhaps involved in dimerisation (as indicated by the many cysteines that could serve to keep a rigid structure necessary to form a dimerisation domain). Deleting these structures might therefore eliminate the risk of activation by antibodies as well as reduce the number of cross reacting antibodies as these domains are the most well conserved of the extracellular part of the protein. In addition, such cysteine rich domains could be problematic to produce in *E. coli* or yeast cells.

The details of constructs are as follows using the P2 and P30 epitopes as non-limiting examples: the P2 epitope will primarily be placed in the extracellular domain of Her2 in combination with the P30 epitope substituting part of or all of the membrane spanning region. The P2 epitope will be placed in regions based on the criteria discussed above. The preferred constructs have the following structures:

	Construct name	Position of P2	Position of P30	Length
	hHER2MA2-1A	59-73	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-2A	103-117	632-652	795
25	hHER2MA2-3A	149-163	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-4A	210-224	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-5A	250-264	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-6A	325-339	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-7A	369-383	632-652	795
30	hHER2MA2-8A	465-479	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-9A	579-593	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-1B	59-73	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-2B	103-117	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-3B	149-163	661-675	795

	Construct name	Position of P2	Position of P30	Length
	hHER2MA2-4B	210-224	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-5B	250-264	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-6B	325-339	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-7B	369-383	661-675	795
5	hHER2MA2-8B	465-479	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-9B	579-593	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-1Y	59-73	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-2Y	103-117	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-3Y	149-163	710-730	795
10	hHER2MA2-4Y	210-224	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-5Y	250-264	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-6Y	325-339	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-7Y	369-383	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-8Y	465-479	710-730	795
15	hHER2MA2-9Y	579-593	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-Z	695-709	710-730	795
	hHER2MA2-C	653-667	632-652	795
	hHER2MA2-BX	695-709	661-675	795
	hHER2MA2-AX	695-709	632-652	795
20	hHER2MA2-4E	210-224	5-25	795
	hHER2MA2-6E	325-339	5-25	795
	hHER2MA2-8E	465-479	5-25	795
	hHER2MA5-4D	210-224	632-652*	666
	hHER2MA5-6D	325-339	632-652*	666
25	hHER2MA5-8D	465-479	632-652*	666
	hHER2MA6-C	653-667	632-652	702

Position of the epitope indicates the first and the last amino acid position of the epitope relative to the start point of mature Her2. Length is the length in amino acids of the complete construct. In all constructs except those where position is indicated with \*, the epitope substitutes an amino acid stretch of the same length as the epitope. "\*" Indicates that the epitope is inserted rather than substituted into Her2. All constructs listed above are therefore truncates of mature Her2, where the omitted part is from the C-terminus.

Most of the constructions exist in different versions, e.g. in pcDNA3.1+ vector in fusion with the natural HER2 signal pep-

tide sequence, in the vector pMT/BiP/V5-His-A as a fusion with the BiP leader peptide for expression in *Drosophila* cells and without leader sequence in the pET29b vector for expression in *E. coli* cells.

5 Below are described the models that are intended for use in the screening and selection of modified Her2 proteins.

1. Induction of antibodies in transgenic rat Her2 mice and in rabbits to rat and human Her2, respectively, will be investigated by conventional ELISA technology after at least  
10 three immunisations. Commercially available antibodies to human and rat Her2 will be used as positive controls.
2. These rabbit antibodies will be used to study the putative inhibition of growth of human and transgenic mouse tumour cells overexpressing Her2 in an *in vitro* model.
- 15 3. T cell proliferation of PBL from tetanus immunised patients towards selected human Her2 molecules will be investigated by conventional methods.
4. The ability of modified rat Her2 molecules to induce CTL responses in rat Her2 transgenic mice will be studied using  
20 tumours from these mice as targets.
5. It is intended to synthesise a selected set of peptides in the transmembrane region of human Her2 encompassing P2 and P30 epitopes. These peptides will be tested in proliferation of PBL from humans previously immunized with tetanus  
25 toxoid to determine whether P2 and P30 epitopes could be efficiently processed out from within the Her2 sequences and presented to T cells.

6. It is quite possible that selected human modified Her2 proteins will be tested to generate neutralising antibodies in a mouse that has been genetically constructed to only expresses human VDJ genes. Such a mouse is available from  
5 Abgenix, Fremont, CA, U.S.A. as a collaboration.

Four well-characterised transgenic mouse models for breast cancer that contains rat Her2 oncogene have been described. The first three transgenic mice express activated Her2 oncogene while the fourth model utilises inactivated Her2. All  
10 models utilise an MMTV promoter to drive expression in mammary glands.

We have decided to use two transgenic mice models: 1) a more aggressive tumour model described by Muller et al using activated Her2 oncogene (*Muller et al, 1989*) and 2) a less ag-  
15 gressive tumour model in which inactivated Her2 is used to create focal mammary tumours with long latency (*Guy et al, 1992*). Both transgenic mice are purchased from Jackson and/or Charles Rivers Laboratories.

In the initial experiments, these mice are allowed to produce  
20 antibodies and CTL responses by immunising and boosting with modified rat Her2 proteins. Incidence of tumours will then be investigated as described by others (*Muller et al, 1989; Guy et al, 1992; Katsumata et al, 1995*). Antibody levels will be measured by an ELISA assay. The CTL activity would be deter-  
25 mined by generating target cells expressing rat Her2 as mentioned above.

Alternatively, the nude mouse xenograft carcinoma model can be used for passive vaccination experiments. Nude mice can be transplanted with human tumours and inhibition of tumours  
30 could be attempted with passive transfer of serum from normal or humanised mice immunised with modified Her2 proteins. While

this would be useful for studying the role of antibody in suppressing tumours, CTL activity cannot be directly measured in this system.

In the second in vivo model, tumours in mice would also be generated by transplanting cells lines from tumours of transgenic mice described above. Cell lines generated from these mice would be transferred into relevant mouse strain and localisation established using standard protocols.

Transfer of mouse tumours cells over expressing rat Her2:

10 In this system, cells will be transfected with rat genes and transferred into MHC compatible mice. Inhibition of tumour growth would be achieved by generating anti-Her2 responses.

In these systems; modified Her2 proteins would be used as vaccine in adjuvants to generate antibodies and CTL responses.

15 DNA vaccination has been used successfully in several systems to mount an effective immune response. We are currently investigating means of DNA delivery using modified self proteins. It is our intention to utilise DNA vaccination approach to determine effects of modified Her2 constructs in inhibiting  
20 tumours in transgenic mouse models of breast cancer. Similar approach can than possibly be applied in humans for the treatment of this disease.

### EXAMPLE 3

#### *Production of an anti-FGF8b vaccine*

25 In the following it will be described how a human autovaccine against FGF8b can be developed through modification of the molecule by insertion of one or more promiscuous foreign T

cell epitopes to reveal a panel of immunogenized "FGF8b" molecules. The constructs will be tested for their ability to induce antibodies that are cross-reactive with the authentic parts of the FGF8b molecule. Subsequently, in several *in vitro* assays and *in vivo* animal models the efficacy of the different constructs will be evaluated. The induced antibodies will be tested for their ability to activate complement via the classical pathway and to initiate ADCC via Fc-receptors. Finally, the different molecules will be tested in animal models of human prostate and breast cancers.

#### **Construction of an autovaccine against FGF8b**

Due to the complete identity of the murine and human FGF8b polypeptides, all constructs can be used for experiments in both humans and mice.

15 The promiscuous tetanus toxoid T helper cell epitopes P2 and P30 used with success in the human TNF $\alpha$  vaccine will be inserted into the FGF8b polypeptide. Due to the small size of FGF8b, constructs will be made with one epitope per molecule. Other promiscuous T helper cell epitopes such as the influenza haemagglutinin epitope HA(307-319) and other T-cell epitopes discussed herein could also be considered (O'Sullivan 1991).

4 different immunogenized FGF8b constructs have been made, with the epitopes distributed along the molecule. These four constructs are made on the basis of multiple and pairwise alignments of the FGF family of proteins. A pairwise alignment of FGF2 and FGF8b is used as basis for an analysis of the presumed secondary structure (i.e. beta-sheet distribution) along the FGF8b molecule. The residues that are conserved between FGF2 and FGF8b does not cluster anywhere on the three-dimensional structure, which indicates that there are no particular regions of the molecule that cannot be replaced

without having deleterious effects on the folding capabilities. The amino acid residues in FGF2 that align to the cysteine residues in FGF8b are positioned very close to each other three-dimensionally, indicating that they form a  
5 disulfide bond in FGF8b, and that the alignment is correct. The flexibility of the N-terminal part of FGF2 was also considered.

The variant of FGF8b with the P30 epitope in the N-terminal (F30N) was designed on the basis of no-gap alignments of the  
10 amino acid residues of the FGF8b protein and the P30 epitope (SEQ ID NO: 14), and scoring the different positions with regard to chemical properties of every amino acid residue. Only the region N-terminally of the predicted beta-barrel structure was considered. In the case of F30N, there are 9  
15 similar out of 21 residues. Using this pseudo-algorithm, the substitutions would be expected to result in minimal overall structural changes. The sequences of the four different constructs, as well as three-dimensional representations of the replaced amino acids are shown in Figure 6.

20 The variant of FGF8b with the P2 epitope (SEQ ID NO: 12) in the C-terminal (F2C) was initially designed as F30N. There is, however, predicted a good Kd epitope at positions 195-203. Therefore, the P2 epitope is inserted just C-terminal of this epitope. Again, only the region C-terminal of the predicted  
25 beta-barrel was considered.

The internal variants of FGF8b (F30I and F2I) were constructed by replacing external loops in the FGF2 structure with the epitopes P2 and P30, respectively, whereby the beta-barrel structural backbone of the FGF structure presumably will  
30 remain unchanged.



The immunogenized FGF8b molecules have been expressed in *Escherichia coli*, which facilitates large scale production of the proteins at minimal costs. Although, FGF8b contains two potential N-glycosylation sites (Asn31 and Asn177), bacteri-  
5 ally expressed recombinant FGF8b has been shown to be biologically active (MacArthur 1995a, Blunt 1997). In order to facilitate purification and refolding, the FGF8b variants have been produced in a His-tagged version, thereby rendering coupling to a Ni-charged column possible.

10 Purification of the molecules has been performed utilizing the high positive charge of the protein molecules or the His-tag, and refolding will be performed using standard procedures taking the formation of the disulfide bridge into account.

The four immunogenized molecules have also together with the  
15 wild type FGF8b cDNA been inserted into DNA vaccination vectors.

#### **Screening and selection of the modified FGF8b molecules**

The four immunogenized FGF8b molecules have been expressed in bacteria and subsequently purified from inclusion bodies. In  
20 parallel, the constructs will be used as DNA vaccines. The different constructs will then be compared for their ability to induce various effects, which are desired in the treatment of prostate and breast cancer patients. Such investigations will be performed using several different *in vitro* and *in vivo*  
25 assays. Finally, the results of the experiments will form the basis for the ultimate selection of one or two candidates for a FGF8b vaccine in humans.

***in vitro* models****Analyses in the murine system**

Mice of different haplotypes as well as rabbits will be immunized with the different FGF8b constructs in Complete Freund's Adjuvant and subsequently boosted at least twice with the same antigens emulsified in Incomplete Freund's Adjuvant. Thus, the ability of the different constructs to break E-cell tolerance can be compared. DNA vaccination will be performed on other animals using purified DNA in Complete Freund's Adjuvant / Incomplete Freund's Adjuvant injected intra muscularly with 14 day intervals.

Serum samples will be obtained at several time points during the immunization schedule, and the ability of the different constructs to induce FGF8b specific antibodies will be determined using a conventional ELISA method (Rochon 1994). A commercial polyclonal antiserum, as well as a commercial monoclonal antibody raised against FGF8b (R&D), would be used for positive controls. The FGF8b protein is commercially available (R&D) but will also be produced along with the other FGF8b constructs and subsequently purified/refolded. This product can then be used for coating of plates in a direct ELISA for testing the sera from mice/rabbits immunized with FGF8b variant proteins.

A valuable tool for investigating the effects of vaccinating against FGF8b will be a FGF8b dependent cancer cell line. Several FGF8b positive cancer cell lines, e.g. MCF-7 or SC-3, are described in the literature. Such a FGF8b dependent murine cancer cell line will be identified using quantitative RT-PCR, cell proliferation experiments, and STAT-3 phosphorylation assays.

The presence of FGF8b ligated to a FGF receptor on the cell surface will be detected with FGF8b specific antibodies in FACS or ELISA analysis. Antibodies directed against several of the different FGF receptors are commercially available (R&D).

- 5 The constructs will be compared with respect to their ability to induce antibodies capable of activating complement lysis of FGF8b producing / bearing cells. This can be detected with one of the mouse tumor cell lines expressing FGF8b described earlier or, alternatively using osmotically FGF8b-loaded  
10 cells. Sera from normal or transgenic mice (see below) immunized with the human FGF8b constructs will be incubated with the cell line and subsequently incubated with fresh guinea pig complement. Antibody mediated complement lysis of the cells can be detected by standard procedures.
- 15 The ability of the induced antibodies to mediate ADCC can be studied by measuring the <sup>51</sup>Cr-release from labeled FGF8b expressing cells. The effector cells will be PBMC from syngeneic mice. For establishing the assay, it may be convenient to use a mouse cell line capable of mediating ADCC (positive for  
20 Fc(-receptors) as effector cell with an antibody against human FGF8b.

In order to show that the FGF8b candidate vaccines do not somehow promote autoantibody induced tumor growth we will also perform a tumor proliferation assay. Serum samples from immunized mice will be incubated with FGF8b expressing tumor  
25 cells. Proliferation of the tumor cells can then be detected by their ability to incorporate <sup>3</sup>H-thymidine, which subsequently is added to the cells.

Since FGF8b is known to induce proliferation of a range of  
30 mammalian cells, it will also be necessary to examine the growth promoting effects of the variant proteins. This can be

done using cell proliferation assays as the one used by Marsh 1999.

The biological effect of FGF8b on mammalian cells should be neutralized by the autoantibodies. This can be demonstrated by  
5 using recombinant FGF8b and e.g. NIH3T3 in cell proliferation (and morphology changes) studies. Addition of the autoantibodies should abolish the transforming activity of FGF8b.

### **Immunization protocol**

The number of animals that are to enter a FGF8b AutoVac immu-  
10 nization experiment must depend on the expected penetrance of the disease in the model, and thus, the numbers needed to obtain statistically significant information. The immunization protocol must be based on the experience we have from the TNFa AutoVac project. Various immunization protocols have been used  
15 for immunizing mice with the various TNFa analogs for specific purposes, but most experiments were performed using the following protocol:

1. The mice should be individually marked either by earmarks or with transponders, 10 animals in each cage. Presumably,  
20 males and females must be evaluated separately, but in any case, we will not have both sexes in the same cage. The animals should be left to rest at least 3 days after transport and marking.

2. Antigen 1 mg/ml in PBS buffer was emulsified with an equal  
25 volume Freund's complete antigen (CFA) (Difco or Sigma). The emulsion is checked by placing a drop of the emulsion on a water surface and it is observed whether the drop holds together or disperses. Mixing is maintained until the drop does not disperse.

3. The standard immunization dose is 100 µg antigen in a 100 µl volume + 100 µl of adjuvant. Thus, the total immunization volume is 200 µl, administered s.c. (sub cutaneously) over the back of the animal.

5 4. Boostings are performed 2-3 weeks after the primary immunization, and subsequently at 2-3 week intervals. The boosting/immunization material is prepared and administered exactly as the immunization material, but Freund's incomplete adjuvant is used. Probably three boosts will induce the maximal titer.  
10 Thus, the highest titers will be obtained 6-9 weeks after the first immunization.

5. Bleedings are orbital bleeds of 50-100 µl usually taken before the first immunization and one week after each boosting. Tail bleeds can also be used, and 10-20 µl can be sufficient for titre determinations.  
15

The initiation point of the immunization program will depend on the development of the disease, and the strategy we want to adopt. Initially, we suggest that it is attempted to generate the maximal immunity as soon as possible, but it is difficult  
20 to start immunizations sooner than at approx. 5 weeks of age. Hereafter, high titres should be maintained by boosting at 6-8 week intervals, after the three initial boosts. There is a potential problem if the FGF8b is necessary for the normal development of the young mouse, and therefore one could argue  
25 in favor of starting the immunizations later in the adult mouse.

#### **Analyses in the human system**

In the selection between the different FGF8b constructs the ability of human antigen presenting cells to present the  
30 inserted immunogenic T cell epitopes to human T cells will be

investigated. This will be done by using the same *in vitro* processing assays for P2 and P30 presentation that were used for the TNF $\alpha$  vaccine. Human T cell lines, which are specific for P2 and P30, will be established from donors vaccinated  
5 against tetanus. Antigen presenting cells (PBMCs) from the same donors will be incubated with the different constructs and T cell lines will be added. The level of presentation of the inserted T cell epitopes can then be compared by measuring the stimulation of the T cell lines.

#### 10 ***in vivo* animal models**

At least three different systems can be used to monitor whether the induced FGF8b antibodies are capable of controlling a FGF8b dependent *in vivo* effect.

Mice will be transplanted with murine FGF8 expressing tumor  
15 cells, and inhibition of tumor progression will be assayed with autovaccination using the modified FGF8b proteins or FGF8b DNA vaccines. The ideal system involves the use of cells isolated from murine tumors. Alternatively, we will use other murine cell lines (e.g. Balb/3T3) stably transfected with the  
20 FGF8b cDNA in an expression vector.

The mouse xenograft carcinoma model will be used for passive vaccination experiments. Nude mice will be transplanted with human tumors, and inhibition of tumors would be attempted with transfer of serum from normal or humanized mice immunized with  
25 modified FGF8b proteins or FGF8b DNA vaccines. This would be very useful for studying the ability of the raised antibodies to suppress tumors.

Another approach to achieve proof of concept will involve the use of mice transgenic for FGF8b. These mice, that are carry-  
30 ing the FGF8b cDNA under control of the very specific mouse

mammary tumor virus (MMTV) promoter, are shown to spontaneously develop FGF8b expressing mammary tumors (Coombes personal communication). Autovaccination of these mice with the FGF8b variant proteins or FGF8b DNA vaccines would enable us  
5 to show if the autovaccine will enable the mice to suppress or reject the tumors.

A possible approach to obtain proof of concept would be to use the Wnt-1 transgenic mice (MacArthur 1995c). Induction of breast cancers by MMTV virus is reported to activate FGF8  
10 expression in more than half of the mice developing tumors. FGF8b-dependency of the tumors, could be established if our autovaccine(s) could suppress the incidence or growth rate of the tumors.

The fact that transgenic mice often show non-physiological  
15 immunological tolerance patterns will most likely not affect this project since the FGF8b polypeptides are identical for human and mouse.

When, a beneficial effect of the FGF8b immunizations eventually has been demonstrated in the mouse model and suitable  
20 human vaccine candidates have been selected it will be possible to perform a limited number of toxicology studies. Subsequently, to obtain a final proof of concept, vaccine studies on breast, and prostate cancer patients can be carried out.

Importantly, if the experiments using *in vivo* models have  
25 positive outcome, more mutants will be constructed based on the data available.

## EXAMPLE 4

*Preparation of MUC-1 analogue*

Only one MUC-1 autovac molecule has been made. This comprises, in total, nine mucin repeats each having the sequence SEQ ID NO: 33. The construction starts with three such sequences, followed by a P2 epitope, followed by three more mucin sequences, followed by a P30 epitope, ended by three mucin sequences.

The construction has been made with and without an N-terminal UNI-his tag (SEQ ID NO: 23). Both variants have been expressed in E. coli. The identity of the expressed protein has been confirmed both by Western blotting and N-terminal sequencing. The protein is expressed in soluble form, but as a dimer which is somewhat surprising.

15 The HIS-tagged MUC-1 molecule has been purified by metal affinity chromatography. The amount of pure protein and the purity is currently unknown.

## EXAMPLE 5

*Breaking of autotolerance in a murine model system*

20 CTL experiments where mice have been immunised with dendritic cells pulsed with both a class I and a class II epitope have previously shown an enhanced CTL induction when immunising as well as restimulating in vitro with both a class I and a class II peptide compared to an immunisation and re-stimulation with  
25 just a class I epitope. This situation is comparable with immunisation with an autovaccine, where a foreign class II epitope is inserted in a self protein. Uptake and processing



of these molecules by professional antigen presenting cells such as dendritic cells, leads to presentation of the foreign class II epitope together with some self class I epitopes. It is known that it is possible to elicit autoreactive CTL's, but  
5 the presence of a foreign class II helper epitope very likely should enhance this CTL induction.

The potential advantage of the present invention for induction of self reactive CTLs is currently being investigated in ovalbumin transgenic mice. There exist four different trans-  
10 genic lines with different ovalbumin expression levels and tolerance states, cf. Kurts C et al. 1997, J. Exp. Med. **186**: 239-245 disclosing the RIP-mOVA transgenic mouse (expressing ovalbumin in pancreas, kidney and thymus and having a high degree of tolerance) and Kurts C et al., 1998, J. Exp. Med.  
15 **188**: 409-414 disclosing the RIP-OVA<sup>low</sup> and RIP-OVA<sup>high</sup> transgenic mice, having low and high expression of ovalbumin, respectively. The last line, RIP-OVA<sup>int</sup> which expresses ovalbumin at an intermediary level has been obtained from Dr. William R. Heath, co-author of the two above-mentioned references.

20 In the body there are different degrees of tolerance to different antigens. One of the least degrees of tolerance is found on circulating antigens in large amounts. These antigens will all enter thymus, where self reactive T-cells are deleted. These antigens are under "central tolerance". Tissue  
25 specific antigens, on the other hand, do not directly enter the thymus and is generally under "peripheral tolerance", exerted by e.g. T-cell anergy.

Two ovalbumin AutoVac constructs have produced. They both relate to the sequence with accession No: J00345 in EMBL where  
30 the sequence from P30 (SEQ ID NO: 14) have been inserted in two different positions.

In construct "OVA 3.1", P30 is inserted in the position that correspond to amino acid nos. 272-292 in ovalbumin. In construct "OVA 3.2", P30 is inserted in the position that corresponds to amino acid nos. 321-341 in ovalbumin. These constructs have been inserted in the vector pVax1 and used for DNA immunisation.

Mice have been immunised intradermally once with 100 ug each of DNA. Three weeks after this immunisation, the spleens were removed and a CTL assay was set up using target cells expressing the dominant ovalbumin epitope SIINFEKL and the scrambled FILKSINE peptide as control. The immunizations provided a clear CTL induction in wild-type C57BL/6 mice - as expected, since both ovalbumin and P30 are foreign in these mice.

We now intend to immunise the 4 lines of ovalbumin transgenic mice with these AutoVac constructs. The RIP-OVA<sup>low</sup>, RIP-OVA<sup>int</sup>, and RIP-OVA<sup>high</sup> express increasing amounts of ovalbumin and have different degrees of tolerance and, as mentioned above, also RIP-mOVA has a high degree of tolerance.

In these 4 lines of transgenic mice, only P30 will be foreign. Ovalbumin is a self-antigen in these mice and this situation will therefore constitute a true autovaccination for CTL induction towards ovalbumin.

Preliminary results obtained in RIP-OVA<sup>low</sup> mice having the lowest degree of "peripheral tolerance" to ovalbumin demonstrated that both the ovalbumin with inserted P30 and the naturally occurring ovalbumin molecules were capable of inducing CTL responses - it is expected that transgenic mice having higher degrees of tolerance will only be capable of mounting a CTL response against the modified ovalbumin molecules and not the naturally occurring form.

## LIST OF REFERENCES

- Ago H et al. (1991). *J Biochem (Tokyo)*, 110, 360-3.
- Abdel-Nabi H et al. (1992). *Sem. Urol.* 10, 45-54.
- Acevedo et al. (1995), *Cancer* 76; 1467-1475.
- 5 Acevedo et al. (1997), *Cancer Detect. Prev.* 21; 295-303.
- Adelstein S et al. (1991), *Science* 251: 1223-1225.
- Babaian RJ et al. (1994), *J. Urol* 152, 1952-1955.
- Barnard JA et al. (1995) *Gastroenterol.* 108(2):564-580.
- Bier H et al. (1995), *Eur. Arch. Otorhinolaryngol.* 252(7):  
10 433-9.
- Bouchard L et al. (1989), *Cell* 57(6): 931-36.
- Blaber M et al. (1996), *Biochemistry* 35, 2086-94.
- Blunt AG et al. (1997), *J Biol Chem* 272, 3733-8.
- Boring CC et al. (1993), *CA Cancer J. Clin.* 43:7-26.
- 15 Boucher et al. (1995), *Hum. Pathol.* 26; 1201-1206.
- Callahan R (1996), *Breast Cancer Res Treat*, 39, 33-44.
- Carter RE (1996), *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 93, 749-753.
- Chang et al., (1981), *Fertil. Steril.* 36; 659-663.
- Chantry A, 1995, *J. Biol. Chem.* 270(7): 3068-73.
- 20 Crossley PH et al. (1996b), *Cell*, 84, 127-36.
- Crossley PH et al. (1995), *Development*, 121, 439-51.
- Crossley PH, Martinez, S. and Martin, G.R. (1996a) Midbrain development induced by FGF8 in the chick embryo. *Nature*, 380, 66-8.
- 25 Dean C et al. (1994), *Int. J. Cancer*, suppl 8: 103-107.
- Dilliogluligil O et al. (1995), *Eur. Urol.* 28, 85-101.
- Doi et al. (1996), *Int. J. Cancer* 65; 454-459.

- Douglas TH et al. (1995), J. Surg. Oncol. 59(4), 246-250.
- Earp HS et al. (1995), Breast Cancer Res. Treat. 35(1):115-32.
- Eccles SA (1994), Invasion Metastasis 14 (1-6):337-48.
- Eppenberger U et al. (1994), J. Neurooncol. 12(3):249-54.
- 5 Dorkin TJ et al. (1999), Oncogene 18: 2755-2761.
- Eriksson AE et al. (1993), Protein. Sci. 2: 1274-84.
- Fernandez-Teran M. et al. (1997), Dev. Biol. 189, 246-55.
- Fujii K et al. (1995), Exp. Cell. Res. 216(1): 261-72.
- Furst J et al. (1994), Urol. Res. 22, 107-113.
- 10 Furthauer M et al. (1997), Development 124: 4253-64.
- Geissler et al. (1997), Lab. Invest. 76: 859-871.
- Gemel J et al. (1996), Genomics 35: 253-7.
- Ghosh AK et al. (1996), Cell Growth Differ 7: 1425-34.
- Goldfarb M et al. (1996), Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 7:  
15 311-25.
- Goodnow CC et al. (1988), Nature 334: 676-682.
- Goodnow CC et al. (1991), Nature 352: 532-536.
- Greenberg NM et al. (1995), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 92:  
3439-3443.
- 20 Guy CT et al. (1992), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci, USA 89: 10578-  
10582.
- Heikinheimo M et al. (1994), Mech Dev, 48: 129-38.
- Henttu P and Vihko P (1989), Bioch. Biophys. Res. Comm. 160:  
903-910.
- 25 Hopp TF and Woods KR (1983), Mol. Immunol. 20: 483-9.
- Horoszewicz JSH et al. (1983), Cancer Res. 43: 1803-1818.
- Horoszewicz JSH et al. (1987), Anticancer Res. 7: 927-936.
- Hoshikawa M et al. (1998), Biochem Biophys Res Commun 244:  
187-91.

- Husmann I et al. (1996), Cytokine Growth Factor Rev 7: 249-58.
- Israeli RS et al. (1994), Cancer Res. 54: 1307-1311.
- Israeli RS et al. (1993), Cancer Res. 53: 227-230.
- Israeli RS et al. (1994), Cancer Res. 54: 6306-6310.
- 5 Jacoby et al. (1984), Adv. Immunol. 35: 157-208.
- Johnson RL and Tabin CJ (1997), Cell 90: 979-90.
- Kahn D et al. (1994), J. Urol. 152: 1490-1495.
- Kapoun AM and Shackelford GM (1997), Oncogene 14: 2985-9.
- Kettunen P and Thesleff I (1998), Dev Dyn 211: 256-68.
- 10 Koga M et al. (1995), J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 54: 1-6.
- Kouhara H et al., (1994), Oncogene 9: 455-62.
- Kozak M (1991), J Cell Biol 115: 887-903.
- Lapthorn et al. (1994), Nature 369: 455-461.
- Lazar et al. (1995), Cancer Res. 55: 3735-3738.
- 15 Leek J et al. (1995), British Journal of Cancer 72: 583-588.
- Leung HY et al. (1996), Oncogene 12: 1833-5.
- Lopes AD (1990), Cancer Res. 50: 6423-6429.
- Loric S et al. (1995), Clin.Chem. 41(12): 1698-1704.
- Lupu R et al. (1995), Semin. Cancer. Biol. 6: 135-145.
- 20 MacArthur CA et al. (1995a), Cell Growth Differ 6: 817-25.
- MacArthur CA et al. (1995b), Development 121: 3603-13.
- MacArthur CA et al. (1995c), J Virol 69: 2501-7.
- Manabe et al. (1985), Gastroenterology 89: 1319-1325.
- Marsh SK et al. (1999), Oncogene 18, 1053-1060.
- 25 Martin L et al. (1993), J. Immunol. 150(49): 1234-43.
- Mattei MG et al. (1995), Mamm Genome 6: 196-7.

- McDonnell WM and Askari FD (1996), New Engl. J. Med 334: 42-45.
- Meyers EN et al. (1998), Nat Genet 18: 136-41.
- Milich DR et al. (1994), J. Immunol. 153(1): 429-435.
- 5 Milner PG et al. (1989), Biochem Biophys Res Commun 165: 1096-103.
- Miyashita Y et al. (1994), Jpn J Cancer Res 85: 1117-23.
- Modjtahedi H et al. (1993a), Br. J. Cancer 67(2): 254-261.
- Modjtahedi H et al. (1993b), Cell. Biophys. 22(1-3): 129-46.
- 10 Modjtahedi H et al. (1996), Br. J. Cancer 73(2): 228-35.
- Moy FJ et al. (1996), Biochemistry, 35: 13552-13561.
- Muller WJ et al. (1988), Cell 54(1): 105-115.
- Murphy GP et al. (1996), Prostate 28: 266-271.
- Murphy GP et al. (1995), Prostate 26: 164-168.
- 15 Murphy GP et al. (1995), Anticancer Research 15(4): 1473-1379.
- Nguyen L et al. (1990), Clin. Chem. 35: 1450-1455.
- Nonomura N et al. (1990), Cancer Res 50: 2316-21.
- O'Sullivan D et al. (1991), J. Immunology 147: 2663-9.
- Ohnishi Y et al. (1995), Br. J. Cancer 71(5): 969-73.
- 20 Ohuchi H et al. (1997a), Development 124: 2235-44.
- Ohuchi H et al. (1997b), Mech Dev 62: 3-13.
- Ohuchi H et al. (1994), Biochem Biophys Res Commun 204: 882-8.
- Payson RA et al. (1996), Oncogene 13: 47-53.
- Pillai et al. (1996), FEBS Lett. 387: 23-26.
- 25 Pollard M and Luckert PH (1994), Anticancer Res. 14: 901-903.
- Prigent SA and Lemoine NR (1992), Progress in Growth Factor Research 4: 1-24.
- R&D focus, Drug News, (1996) 5, 21, 9.

- Rammensee H-G. et al. (1995), Immunogenetics 41: 178-228.
- Begelson W (1995), Cancer 76: 1299-1301.
- Fries LAG et al. (1996), SEER Cancer Statistics Review, 1973-1993: Tables and Graphs, National Cancer Institute, Bethesda, MD.
- Finker-Schaeffer CW et al. (1995), Genomics, 30(1): 105-108.
- Fochon YP et al. (1994), Prostate 25: 219-223.
- Fock KL et al. (1996), Vaccine 14: 1560-1568.
- Fock KL and Clark K (1996), J. Immunol. 156: 3721-3726.
- 10 Rudra-Ganguly N et al. (1998), Oncogene 16: 1487-92.
- Salomon DS et al. (1995), Critical reviews in Oncology/Hematology 19: 183-232.
- Sato B et al. (1993), J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 47: 91-8.
- Schlegel J et al. (1994), J. Neurooncol. 22(3): 249-54.
- 15 Schmitt JF et al. (1996), J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 57: 173-8.
- Sheaff et al. (1996), J. Clin. Pathol. 49: 329-332.
- Sherman L et al. (1998), Genes Dev 12: 1058-71.
- Shimamura K and Rubenstein JL (1997), Development 124: 2709-18.
- 20 Shirai A and Klinman DM (1993), AIDS Res. Hum. Retroviruses 9, 979-983.
- Sokoloff M et al. (1996), Cancer 77(9): 1862-1872.
- Steinhoff U et al. (1994), Eur. J. Immunol. 24(3): 773-76.
- 25 Stevens VC (1986), Ciba Found. Symp. 119: 200-225.
- Su SL et al. (1995), Cancer Res. 55: 1441-1443.
- Syrigos et al. (1998), Gut 42: 88-91.
- Talwar et al. (1976), PNAS 73: 218-222.
- Talwar et al. (1994), PNAS 91: 8532-8536.

- Tanaka A et al. (1992), Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 89: 8928-32.
- Tanaka A et al. (1998), Cancer Research 58: 2053-56.
- Tanaka A et al. (1995), FEBS Lett 363: 226-30.
- Thomas H et al. (1996), Br. J. Cancer, 73(1): 65-72.
- 5 Tjoa B et al. (1996), Prostate 28: 65-69.
- Tjoa B et al. (1995), Prostate 27: 63-69.
- Tokunaga A et al., (1995), Cancer 75(6 suppl.): 1418-25.
- Tosi E et al. (1995), Int. J. Cancer 62(5):643-50.
- Trionzi et al. (1994), Int. J. Onc. 5: 1447-1453.
- 10 Troyer JK et al. (1995), Int. J. Cancer 62: 552-558.
- Valone FH et al. (1995), J. Clin. Oncol. 13(9): 2281-92.
- Valve E et al. (1997), Biochem Biophys Res Commun 232: 173-7.
- van Dam PA et al. J. Clin. Pathol. 1994 47(10): 914-19.
- Weiner LM et al. (1995), Cancer Res. 55(20): 4586-4593.
- 15 Wright GL Jr et al. (1996), Urology 48: 326-334.
- Wu J et al. (1997), J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 62: 1-10.
- Wu X et al. , Fan, Z., Masui, H., Rosen, N., Mendelsohn, J.  
Apoptosis induced by an anti-epidermal growth factor receptor  
monoclonal antibody in a human colorectal carcinoma cell line  
20 and its delay by insulin.
- Wynant GE et al. (1991), Prostate 18: 229-241.
- Xu X et al. (1998), Development 125: 753-65.
- Yamanishi H et al. (1995), J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol 52:  
49-53.
- 25 Yogeewaran and Salk (1981), Science 212: 1514-1516.
- Yokoyama H et al. (1998), Dev Biol 196: 1-10.
- Yoshimura K et al. (1996), Cancer Lett 103: 91-7.
- Yoshiura K et al. (1997), Am J Med Genet 72: 354-62.



Young RA and Davis RW (1983), Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80: 1194-1198.

Yule TD (1993), J. Immunol. 151(6): 3057-3069.

Zhang JD et al. (1991), [published erratum appears in Proc  
5 Natl Acad Sci USA 88(12):5477], Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 88,  
3446-50.

Zhu Z et al. (1995), Int. J. Cancer 62(3): 319-324.

Zhu X et al. (1991), Science 251: 90-3.

## CLAIMS

1. A method for inducing an immune response against a polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, the method comprising effecting simultaneous presentation by antigen presenting cells (APCs) of the animal's immune system of an immunogenically effective amount of
  - 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the polypeptide antigen and/or at least one B-cell epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
  - 2) at least one first T helper cell epitope ( $T_H$  epitope) which is foreign to the animal.
2. A method for down-regulating a cell-associated polypeptide antigen in an animal, including a human being, said polypeptide antigen being weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in the animal, by inducing a specific cytotoxic T-lymphocyte (CTL) response against cells carrying the cell-associated polypeptide antigen on their surface or harbouring the cell-associated polypeptide antigen in their intracellular compartment, the method comprising effecting, in the animal, simultaneous presentation by a suitable antigen presenting cell (APC) of
  - 1) at least one CTL epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and
  - 2) at least one first T-helper lymphocyte ( $T_H$ ) epitope which is foreign to the animal.
3. The method according to claim 1 or 2, wherein said at least one CTL epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class I molecule on the surface of the APC and/or wherein said at least one first foreign  $T_H$  epitope when presented is associated with an MHC Class II molecule on the surface of the APC.

4. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the APC is a dendritic cell or a macrophage.

5. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the polypeptide antigen is selected from a tumour-associated polypeptide antigen, a self-protein, a viral polypeptide antigen, and a polypeptide antigen derived from an intracellular parasite or bacterium.

6. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein presentation by the APC of the CTL epitope and the first foreign  $T_H$  epitope is effected by presenting the animal's immune system with at least one first analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said first analogue comprising a variation of the amino acid sequence of the polypeptide antigen, said variation containing at least the CTL epitope and the first foreign  $T_H$  epitope.

7. The method according to claim 6, wherein the at least first analogue contains a substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

8. The method according to claim 7, wherein the substantial fraction of known and predicted CTL epitopes in the amino acid sequence of the analogue are recognized by at least 90% of the MHC-I haplotypes recognizing all known and predicted CTL epitopes in the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

9. The method according to any one of claims 6-8, wherein substantially all known CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the analogue and/or wherein substantially all predicted CTL epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen are present in the at least first analogue.

10. The method according to any one of claims 6-9, wherein the at least one first analogue further comprises a part consisting of a modification of the structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that  
5 immunization of the animal with the first analogue induces production of antibodies in the animal against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

11. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, which comprises effecting presentation to the animal's immune  
10 system of an immunogenically effective amount of at least one second analogue of the polypeptide antigen, said second analogue containing a modification of the structure of the polypeptide antigen, said modification having as a result that immunization of the animal with the second analogue induces  
15 production of antibodies against the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

12. The method according to claim 11, wherein the modification comprises that at least one second foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is included in the second analogue.

20 13. The method according to any one of claims 6-12, wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) comprise(s) a substantial fraction of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen's B-cell epitopes.

14. The method according to any one of claims 6-13, wherein  
25 the variation and/or modification involves amino acid substitution and/or deletion and/or insertion and/or addition.

15. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein the variation and/or modification comprises that

- at least one first moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said first moiety effecting targeting of the analogue to an antigen presenting cell (APC), and/or
  - at least one second moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said second moiety stimulating the immune system, and/or
  - at least one third moiety is included in the first and/or second analogue(s), said third moiety optimizing presentation of the analogue to the immune system.
- 10 16. The method according to any one of claims 6-15, wherein the variation and/or modification includes duplication of at least one B-cell epitope or of at least one CTL epitope of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen
- 15 17. The method according to any one of claims 6-16, wherein the variation and/or modification includes introduction of a hapten.
18. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are immunodominant.
- 20 19. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are promiscuous.
20. The method according to any one of claims 12-19, wherein the first and/or second foreign  $T_H$  epitope(s) is/are selected from a natural  $T_H$  epitope and an artificial MHC-II binding peptide sequence.
- 25 21. The method according to claim 20, wherein the natural  $T_H$  epitope is selected from a Tetanus toxoid epitope such as P2

or P30, a diphtheria toxoid epitope, an influenza virus hemagglutinin epitope, and a *P. falciparum* CS epitope.

22. The method according to any one of claims 12-21, wherein the first and/or second T<sub>H</sub> epitopes and/or first and/or second  
5 and/or third moieties are present in the form of
- side groups attached covalently or non-covalently to suitable chemical groups in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen or a subsequence thereof, and/or
  - 10 - fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

23. The method according to claim 22, wherein the first moiety is a substantially specific binding partner for an APC specific surface antigen such as a carbohydrate for which there  
15 is a receptor on the APC, e.g. mannan or mannose.

24. The method according to any one of claims 15-23, wherein the second moiety is a cytokine selected from interferon  $\gamma$  (IFN- $\gamma$ ), Flt3L, interleukin 1 (IL-1), interleukin 2 (IL-2), interleukin 4 (IL-4), interleukin 6 (IL-6), interleukin 12  
20 (IL-12), interleukin 13 (IL-13), interleukin 15 (IL-15), and granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF), or an effective part thereof; a heat-shock protein selected from HSP70, HSP90, HSC70, GRP94, and calreticulin (CRT), or an effective part thereof; or a hormone.

- 25 25. The method according to any one of claims 15-24, wherein the third moiety is a lipid such as a palmitoyl group, a myristyl group, a farnesyl group, a geranyl-geranyl group, a GPI-anchor, and an N-acyl diglyceride group.

26. The method according to claim any one of claims 6-25,  
30 wherein the first and/or second analogue(s) has/have substan-

tially the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.

27. The method according to any one of claims 6-26, wherein presentation by the APC is effected by administering, to the  
5 animal, an immunogenically effective amount of the at least one first analogue.

28. The method according to claim 27, wherein is also administered an immunologically effective amount of the at least one second analogue.

10 29. The method according to claim 27 or 28, wherein said at least one first and/or second analogue(s) is/are formulated together with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier and/or vehicle and, optionally an adjuvant.

30. The method according to claim 29, wherein said adjuvant  
15 facilitates uptake by APCs, such as dendritic cells, of the at least first and/or second analogues.

31. The method according to claim 30, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of an immune targeting adjuvant; an immune modulating adjuvant such as a toxin, a  
20 cytokine, and a mycobacterial derivative; an oil formulation; a polymer; a micelle forming adjuvant; a saponin; an immunostimulating complex matrix (ISCOM matrix); a particle; DDA; aluminium adjuvants; DNA adjuvants;  $\gamma$ -inulin; and an encapsulating adjuvant.

25 32. The method according to claim 31, wherein the cytokine is as defined as in claim 24, or an effective part thereof, wherein the toxin is selected from the group consisting of listeriolysin (LLO), Lipid A (MPL, L180.5/RalLPS), and heat-labile enterotoxin, wherein the mycobacterial derivative is

selected from the group consisting of muramyl dipeptide, complete Freund's adjuvant, RIBI, and a diester of trehalose such as TDM and TDE, wherein the immune targeting adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of CD40 ligand, CD40 anti-  
5 bodies or specifically binding fragments thereof, mannose, a Fab fragment, and CTLA-4, wherein the oil formulation comprises squalene or incomplete Freund's adjuvant, wherein the polymer is selected from the group consisting of a carbohydrate such as dextran, PEG, starch, mannan, and mannose; a  
10 plastic polymer such as; and latex such as latex beads, wherein the saponin is *Quillaja saponaria* saponin, Quil A, and QS21, and wherein the particle comprises latex or dextran.

33. The method according to any one of claims 27-32, which includes administration via a route selected from the oral  
15 route and the parenteral route such as the intradermal, the subdermal, the intracutaneous, the subcutaneous; the peritoneal, the buccal, the sublingual, the epidural, the spinal, the anal, and the intracranial routes.

34. The method according to any of claim 27-33, which includes  
20 at least one administration a year, such as at least 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 12 administrations a year.

35. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying a  
25 nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the at least one CTL epitope and the at least one  $T_H$  epitope.

36. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at  
30 least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least first analogue.



37. The method according to any one of claims 15-26, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

38. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 or 36, wherein presentation is effected by administering, to the animal, a non-pathogenic microorganism or virus which is carrying at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least second analogue.

39. The method according to claim 38, wherein the non-pathogenic microorganism or virus is administered once to the animal.

40. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by *in vivo* introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment which encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and/or the at least one B-cell epitope, and the at least one first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope.

41. The method according to any one of claims 6-14, wherein presentation is effected by *in vivo* introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first analogue.

42. The method according to any one of claims 15-26, wherein the T<sub>H</sub> epitope and/or the first and/or second and/or third moieties are present in the form of fusion partners to the amino acid sequence derived from the cell-associated

polypeptide antigen, and wherein presentation is effected by *in vivo* introducing, into the APC, at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the first and/or second analogue.

- 5 43. The method according to any one of claims 11-14 and 41, which further comprises *in vivo* introduction, into the APC, of at least one nucleic acid fragment encoding and expressing the second analogue.
- 10 44. The method according to any one of claims 1-5, wherein presentation is effected by *in vivo* co-introducing, into the APC, at least two nucleic acid fragments, wherein one encodes and expresses the at least one CTL epitope and wherein another encodes and expresses the at least one first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope, and wherein the first foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is as defined in  
15 any one of claims 1, 2 and 21-24.
45. The method according to any one of claims 40-44, wherein the nucleic acid fragment(s) introduced is/are selected from naked DNA, DNA formulated with charged or uncharged lipids,  
20 DNA formulated in liposomes, DNA included in a viral vector, DNA formulated with a transfection-facilitating protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting protein or polypeptide, DNA formulated with a targeting carbohydrate, DNA formulated with Calcium precipitating agents, DNA coupled to  
25 an inert carrier molecule, and DNA formulated with an adjuvant.
46. The method according to claim 45, wherein the adjuvant is selected from the group consisting of the adjuvants defined in any one of claims 30-32.
- 30 47. The method according to any one of claims 40-46, wherein the mode of administration is as defined in claim 33 or 34.

48. A method for selection of an immunogenic analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen which is weakly immunogenic or non-immunogenic in an animal, said immunogenic analogue being capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal  
5 against cells displaying an MHC Class I molecule bound to an epitope derived from the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising

- a) identifying at least one subsequence of the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen which  
10 does not contain known or predicted CTL epitopes,
- b) preparing at least one putatively immunogenic analogue of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen by introducing, in the amino acid sequence of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, at least one  $T_H$  epitope foreign to the animal in a  
15 position within the at least one subsequence identified in step a), and
- c) selecting the/those analogues prepared in step b) which are verifiably capable of inducing a CTL response in the animal.

20 49. The method according to claim 48, wherein

- 1) the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain cysteine residues, or, alternatively, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the pattern of cysteine residues, and/or
- 25 2) the subsequence identified in step a) further does not contain known or predicted glycosylation sites, or, alternatively, wherein the  $T_H$  epitope introduced in step b) does not substantially alter the glycosylation pattern, and/or
- 3) the subsequence identified in step a) contributes significantly to a pathological effect exerted by the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and wherein the introduc-  
30

tion in step b) of the foreign  $T_H$  epitope reduces or abolishes said patophysiological effect, and/or

- 4) the subsequence identified in step a) is homologous to an amino acid sequence of a different protein antigen of the animal, and wherein the introduction of the  $T_H$  epitope in step b) substantially removes the homology, and/or
  - 5) introduction in step b) of the foreign  $T_H$  epitope results in preservation of a substantial fraction of B-cell epitopes of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
- 10 50. The method according to claim 49, variant 5, wherein the analogue has the overall tertiary structure of the cell-associated polypeptide antigen.
51. A method for the preparation of cell producing an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising introducing, into a vector, a nucleic acid sequence encoding an analogue which has been selected according to the method of any one of claims 48-50 and transforming a suitable host cell with the vector.
- 15 52. A method for the preparation of an analogue of a cell-associated polypeptide antigen, the method comprising culturing the cell obtained according to the method of claim 51 under conditions facilitating expression of the nucleic acid sequence encoding the cell-associated polypeptide antigen, and recovering the analogue from the culture supernatant or from the cells.
- 20 53. The method according to claim 52 which further comprises the step of purifying the recovered analogue and, optionally subjecting the purified product to artificial post-transla-
- 25

tional modifications such as refolding, treatment with enzymes, chemical modification, and conjugation.

54. The method according to any one of the preceding claims, wherein the weak cell-associated antigen is selected from the group consisting of 5 alpha reductase,  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein, AM-1, APC, APRIL, BAGE,  $\beta$ -catenin, Bcl1, bcr-abl (b3a2), CA-125, CASP-8 / FLICE, Cathepsins, CD19, CD20, CD21, CD23, CD22, CD33, CD35, CD44, CD45, CD46, CD5, CD52, CD55 (791Tgp72), CD59, CDC27, CDK4, CEA, c-myc, Cox-2, DCC, DoR3, E6 / E7, EGFR, EMBP, Ena78, farsyl transferase, FGF8a or FGF8b, FLK-1/KDR, Folic Acid Receptor, G250, GAGE-Family, gastrin 17, Gastrin-releasing hormone (Bombesin), GD2 / GD3, GM2, GnRH, GnTV, GP1, gp100 / Pmel 17, gp-100-in4, gp15, gp75 / TRP-1, hCG, Heparanase, Her2 / neu, HMTV, Hsp70, hTERT (telomerase), IGFR1, IL-13R, iNOS, Ki 67, KIAA0205, K-ras, H-ras, N-ras, KSA (CD17-1A), LDLR-FUT, MAGE Family (MAGE-1, MAGE-2, MAGE-3, etc), Mammaglobin, MAP17, Melan-A / MART-1, mesothelin, MIC A/B, MT-MMP's, Mox1, Mucin such as MUC-1, MUC-2, MUC-3, and MUC-4 being abberantly glycosylated, MUM-1, NY-ESO-1, Osteonectin, p15, P170 / MDR1, p53, p97 / melanotransferrin, PAI-1, PDGF, Plasminogen (uPA), PRAME, Probasin, Progenipointin, PSA, PSM, RAGE-1, Rb, RCAS1, SART-1, SSX gene family, STAT3, STn (mucin assoc.), TAG-72, TGF- $\alpha$ , TGF- $\beta$ , Thymosin  $\beta$  15, TNF- $\alpha$ , TPA, TPI, TRP-1, Tyrosinase, VEGF, ZAG, p16INK4, and Glutathione S-transferase.

55. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is human PSM.

56. The method according to claim 55, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the PSM amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 2 positions 16-52 and/or 87-108 and/or 210-230 and/or 269-289 and/or 298-324 and/or 442-465 and/or 488-514 and/or 598-630 and/or 643-662 and/or 672-699.

57. The method according to claim 55 or 56 used in the treatment or amelioration of prostate cancer.

58. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is fibroblast growth factor 8b (FGF8b).

59. The method according to claim 58, where the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 6 positions 1-54 and/or 178-215 and/or 55-58 and/or 63-68 and/or 72-76 and/or 85-91 and/or 95-102 and/or 106-111 and/or 115-120 and/or 128-134 and/or 138-144 and/or 149-154 and/or 158-162 and/or 173-177, and wherein the introduction preferably does not substantially involve amino acids 26-45 and amino acids 186-215.

60. The method according to claim 58 or 59 used in the treatment or amelioration of cancer such as prostate cancer and breast cancer.

61. The method according to claim 54, wherein the cell-associated polypeptide antigen is Her2.

62. The method according to claim 61, wherein the foreign T-cell epitope is introduced in a part of the Her2 amino acid sequence defined by SEQ ID NO: 3 positions 5-25 and/or 59-73 and/or 103-117 and/or 149-163 and/or 210-224 and/or 250-264 and/or 325-339 and/or 369-383 and/or 465-479 and/or 579-593 and/or 632-652 and/or 653-667 and/or 661-675 and/or 695-709 and/or 710-730.

72-86 and/or 146-160 and/or 221-235 and/or 257-271 and/or 387-401.

63. The method according to claim 61 or 62 used in the treatment or amelioration of breast cancer.

64. An analogue of human PSM which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of PSM and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

65. The analogue according to claim 64, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the PSM amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the PSM amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the PSM amino acid sequence.

66. The analogue according to claim 65, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 56.

67. An analogue of human Her2 which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of Her2 and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

68. The analogue according to claim 67, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the Her2 amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the Her2 amino acid sequence.

69. The analogue according to claim 68, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 62.

70. An analogue of human/murine FGF8b which is immunogenic in humans, said analogue comprising a substantial part of all

known and predicted CTL and B-cell epitopes of FGF8b and including at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope as defined in any one of claims 18-21.

71. The analogue according to claim 70, wherein the at least one foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is present as an insertion in the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as a substitution of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence or as the result of deletion of part of the FGF8b amino acid sequence.

72. The analogue according to claim 71, wherein the foreign T<sub>H</sub> epitope is introduced in the positions defined in claim 59.

73. An immunogenic composition which comprises, as an effective immunogenic agent the analogue according to any one of claims 64-72 in admixture with a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable carrier or vehicle, and optionally an adjuvant.

74. A nucleic acid fragment which encodes an analogue according to any one of claims 64-72.

75. A vector carrying the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74.

76. The vector according to claim 75 which is capable of autonomous replication.

77. The vector according to claim 75 or 76 which is selected from the group consisting of a plasmid, a phage, a cosmid, a mini-chromosome, and a virus.

78. The vector according to any one of claims 75-77, comprising, in the 5'-3' direction and in operable linkage, a promoter for driving expression of the nucleic acid fragment



according to claim 74, optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a leader peptide enabling secretion of or integration into the membrane of the polypeptide fragment, the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74, and optionally a nucleic acid sequence encoding a terminator.

79. The vector according to any one of claims 75-78 which, when introduced into a host cell, is integrated in the host cell genome or is not capable of being integrated in the host cell genome.

80. A transformed cell carrying the vector of any one of claims 75-79.

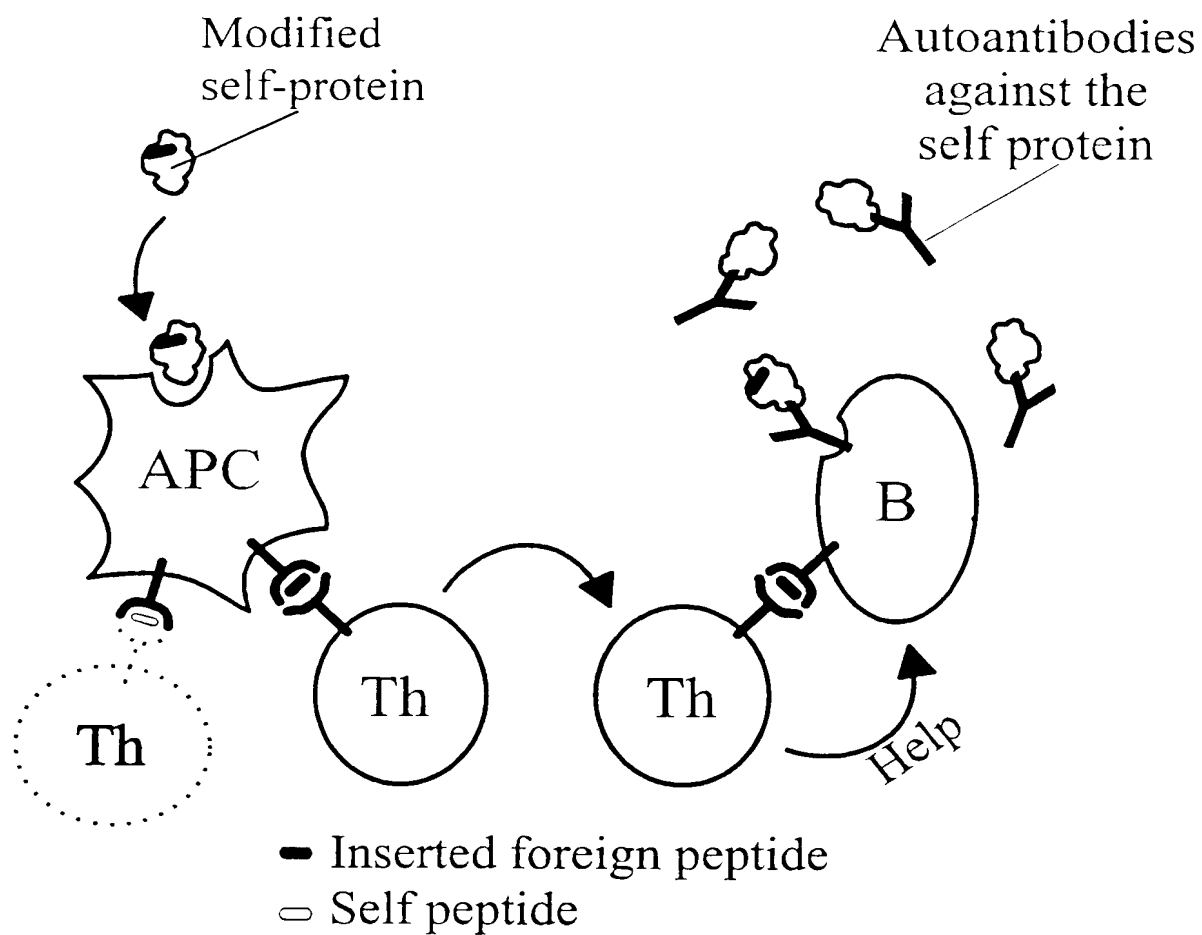
81. A composition for inducing production of antibodies against PSM, Her2 or FGF8b, the composition comprising

- 1) a nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74 or a vector according to any one of claims 75-79, and
- 2) a pharmaceutically and immunologically acceptable diluent and/or vehicle and/or adjuvant.

82. A stable cell line which carries the vector according to any one of claims 75-79 and which expresses the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74, and which optionally secretes or carries the analogue according to any one of claims 64-72 on its surface.

83. A method for the preparation of the cell according to claim 80, the method comprising transforming a host cell with the nucleic acid fragment according to claim 74 or with the vector according to any one of claims 75-79.

1/6

**Fig. 1**

2/6

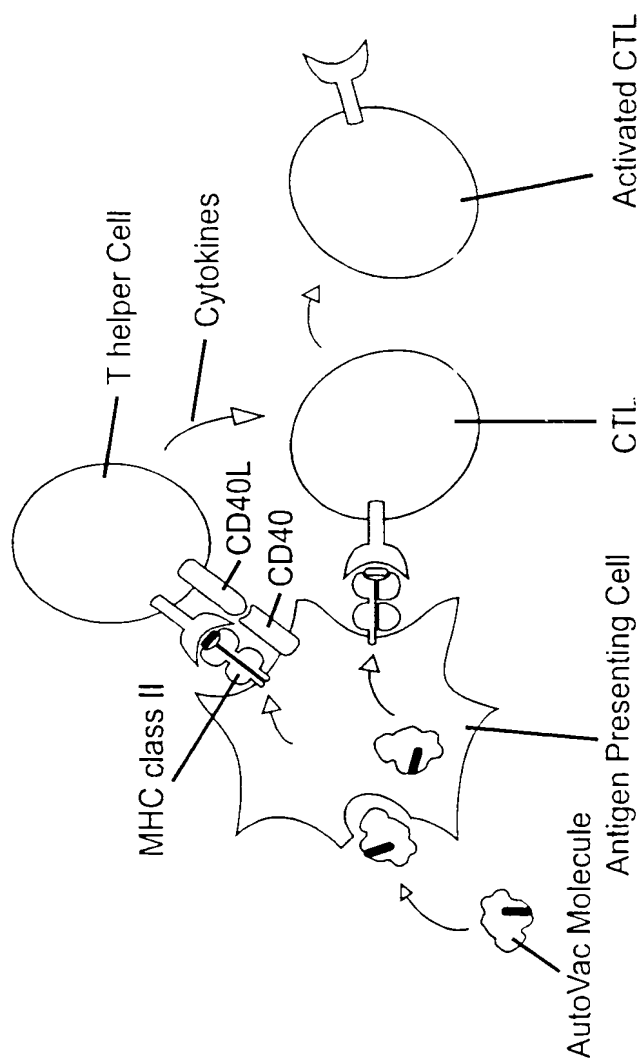


Fig. 2

3/6

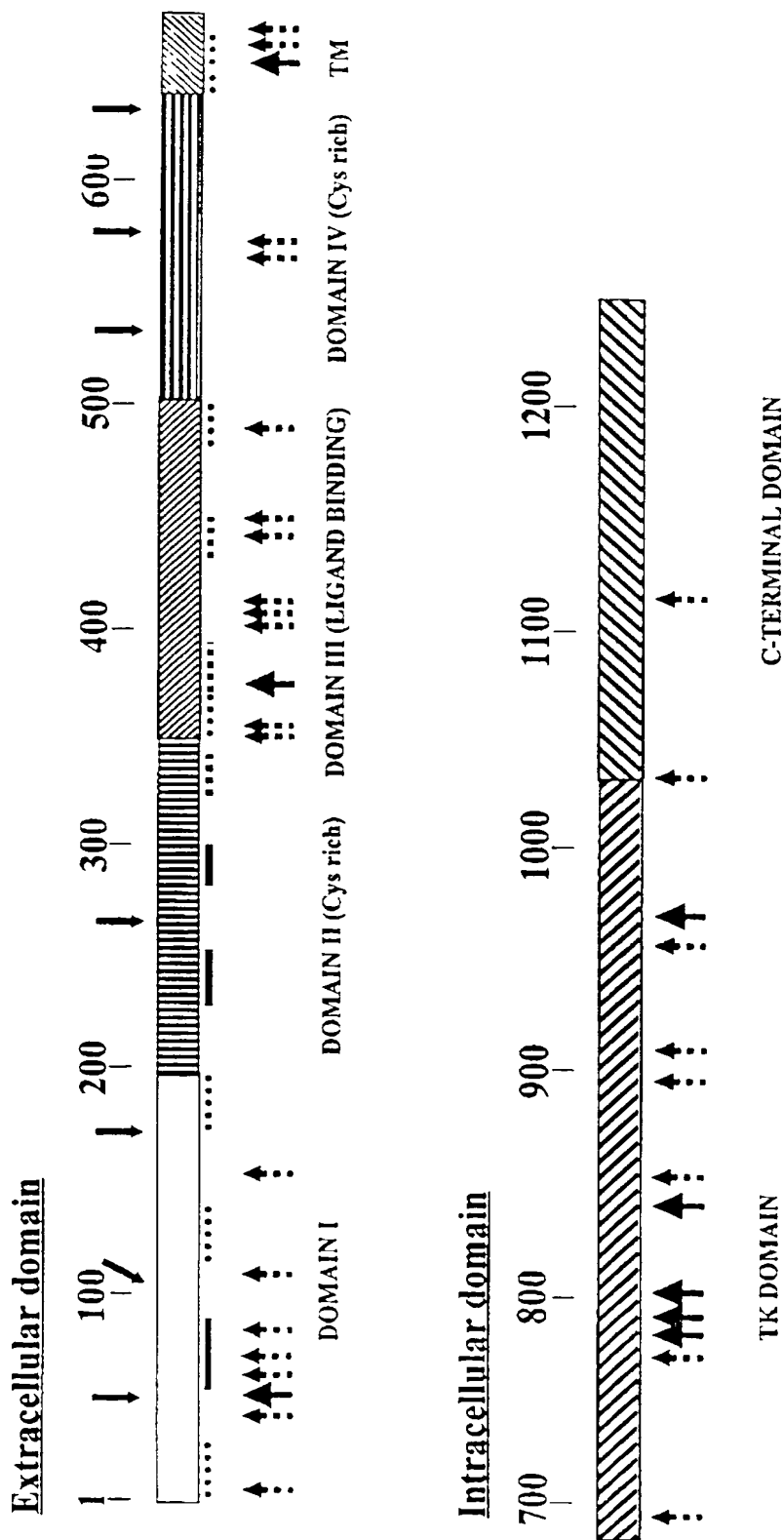
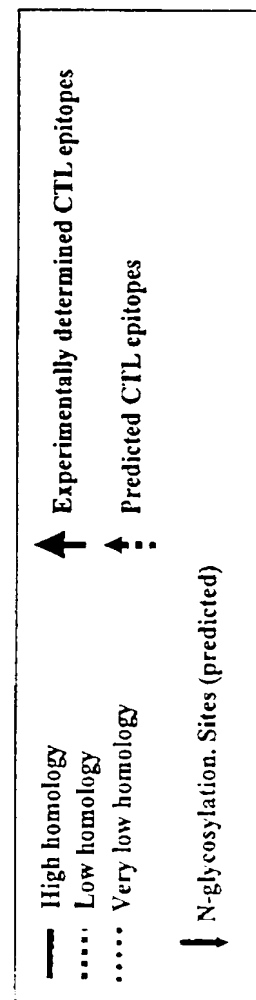


Fig. 3



4/6

# Human PSM constructs (schematic representation)

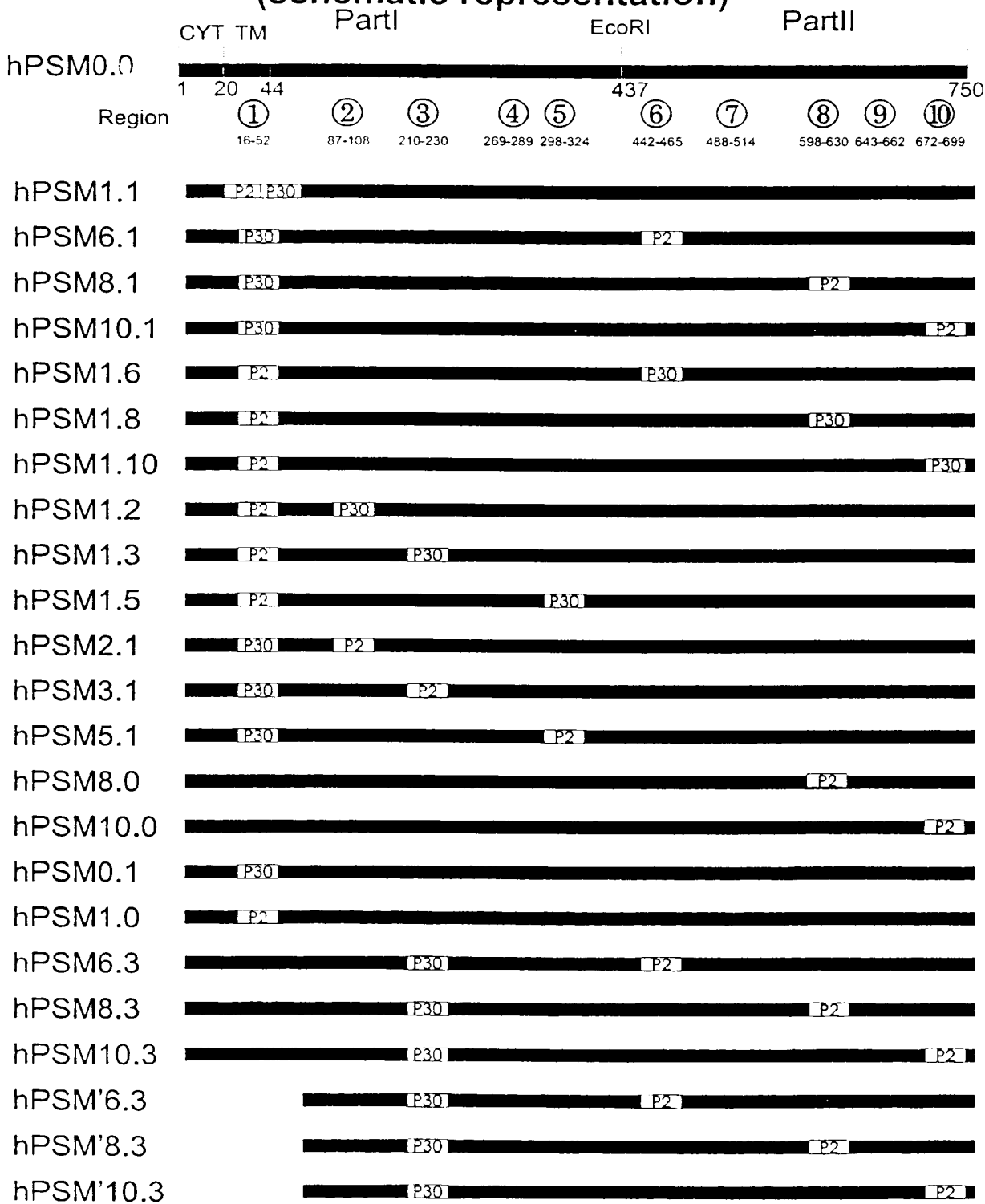


Fig. 4

5/6

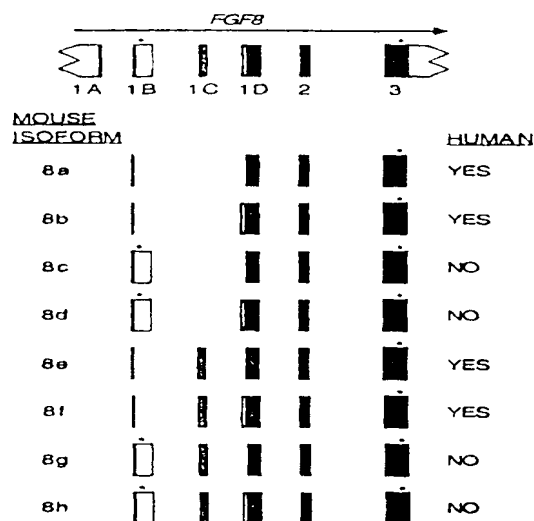


Fig. 5A

FGF8e and -f				FGF8b and -f		
MGSPRSALSC	LLHLLVLCL	<u>QAQEGPGRGP</u>	<u>ALGRELASLF</u>	<u>RAGREPQGV</u>	<u>QQVTQSSPN</u>	31
<u>FTQHVREQSL</u>	VTDQLSRRLI	RTYQLYSRTS	GKHVQVLANK	RINAMAEDGD	PFAKLIVETD	91
TFGSRVRVRG	AETGLYIQMN	KKGKLIAXSN	GKGKDCVFTE	IVLENNYTAL	QNAKYEGWYM	151
AFTRKGRPRK	GSKTRQHORE	VHFMKRLPRG	HHTTEQSLRF	EFLNYPPFTR	SLRGSQRTWA	211
PEPR						215

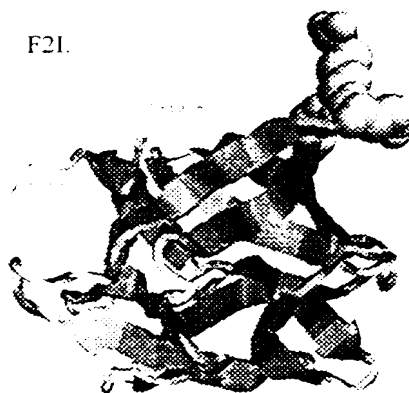
Fig. 5B

6/6

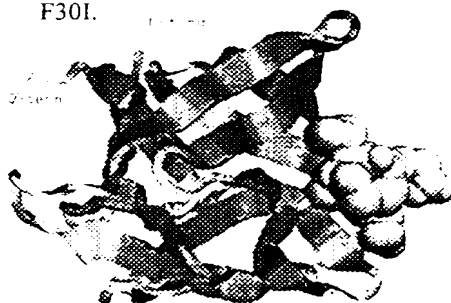
F30N.



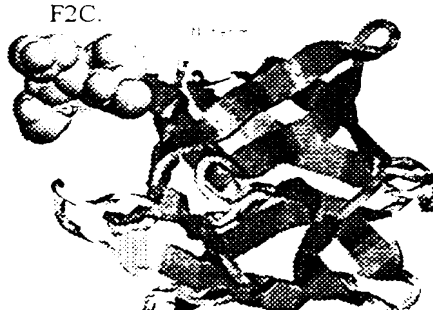
F2I.



F30I.



F2C.



WT	<u>MAQVTSALSCDLEHLLLVICLDQ</u> AVTVQSSSPNFTQHVPEQSLVTDQLSPRLIFTYQLYSRTSGKHVQ	66
F30N	MAQVT <u>VFN</u> NETVSWLEVEVSASHLEFRLIFTYQLYSRTSGKHVQ	46
F2I	MAQVTQSSPNFTQHVRECQLVTDQLSPRLIFTYQLYSRTSGKHVQ	46
F30I	MAQVTQSSPNFTQHVPEQSLVTDQLSPRLIFTYQLYSRTSGKHVQ	46
F2C	MAQVTQSSPNFTQHVRECQLVTDQLSPRLIFTYQLYSRTSGKHVQ	46

WT	VLANFFINAMAECDGPPFAFLIVETDTF	GSPFVVRGAETGLYICMNFEGKLIAT	119
F30N	VLANKPINAMAECDGPPFAFLIVETDTF	GSPFVVRGAETGLYICMNFEGKLIAT	99
F2I	VLANFRINAMAECDGPPFAFLIVETDQYIKANSKFIGITEL	GSPFVVRGAETGLYICMNFEGKLIAT	112
F30I	VLANFFINAMAECDGPPFAFLIVETDTF	GSPFVVRGAETGLYICMNFEGKLIAT	99
F2C	VLANFFINAMAECDGPPFAFLIVETDTF	GSPFVVRGAETGLYICMNFEGKLIAT	99

WT	SNQ	FGKDCVFTEIGLENNYTALQNAFYEGWYMAFTFRGRPRFGSFTPQ	167
F30N	SNQ	FGKDCVFTEIGLENNYTALQNAFYEGWYMAFTFRGRPRFGSFTPQ	147
F2I	SNQ	FGKDCVFTEIGLENNYTALQNAFYEGWYMAFTFRGRPRFGSFTPQ	160
F30I	SNQ <u>GFVFN</u> ETVSWLEVEVSASHLEDCVFTEIGLENNYTALQNAFYEGWYMAFTFRGRPRFGSFTPQ	165	
F2C	SNQ	FGKDCVFTEIGLENNYTALQNAFYEGWYMAFTFRGRPRFGSFTPQ	147

WT	HQPEVHEMFPLPFGHHTTEQLPFEFLNYPPFT	PSLFGSQPTWA	PEPR	215
F30N	HQPEVHEMFPLPFGHHTTEQLPFEFLNYPPFT	PSLFGSQPTWA	PEPR	195
F2I	HQPEVHEMFPLPFGHHTTEQLPFEFLNYPPFT	PSLFGSQPTWA	PEPR	208
F30I	HQPEVHEMFPLPFGHHTTEQLPFEFLNYPPFT	PSLFGSQPTWA	PEPR	213
F2C	HQPEVHEMFPLPFGHHTTEQLPFEFLNYPPFTQYIKANSKFIGITEL	PEPR	199	

Fig. 6

## SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> M&E Biotech A/S  
 STEINAA, Lucilla  
 NIELSEN, Klaus Gregorius  
 DALUM, Iben  
 HAANING, Jesper  
 LEACH, Dana  
 BIRK, Peter  
 MOURITSEN, Soren  
 GAUTAM, Anand  
 KARLSSON, Gunilla

<120> NOVEL METHODS FOR THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION

<130> 21113 PC 1

<140>

<141>

<160> 31

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.1

<210> 1

<211> 2253

<212> DNA

<213> Homo sapiens

<220>

<221> CDS

<222> (1)..(2253)

<220>

<221> misc\_feature

<222> (58)..(2253)

<223> Human PSM'

<220>

<221> misc\_feature

<222> (4)..(6)

<223> ggt or tgg encoding Gly and Trp, respectively

<400> 1

atg ggt aat ctc ctt cac gaa acc gac tcg gct gtg gcc acc gcg cgc	48
Met Gly Asn Leu Leu His Glu Thr Asp Ser Ala Val Ala Thr Ala Arg	
1 5 10 15	

ggc cgc cgc tgg ctg tgc gct ggg gcg ctg gtg ctg gcg ggt ggc ttc	96
Arg Pro Arg Trp Leu Cys Ala Gly Ala Leu Val Leu Ala Gly Gly Phe	
20 25 30	



ttt ctc ctc ggc ttc ctc ttc ggg tgg ttt ata aaa tcc tcc aat gaa	144
Phe Leu Leu Gly Phe Leu Phe Gly Trp Phe Ile Lys Ser Ser Asn Glu	
35 40 45	
gct act aac att act cca aag cat aat atg aaa gca ttt ttg gat gaa	192
Ala Thr Asn Ile Thr Pro Lys His Asn Met Lys Ala Phe Leu Asp Glu	
50 55 60	
ttg aaa gct gag aac atc aag aag ttc tta tat aat ttt aca cag ata	240
Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr Gln Ile	
65 70 75 80	
cca cat tta gca gga aca gaa caa aac ttt cag ctt gca aag caa att	288
Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Glu Gln Asn Phe Gln Leu Ala Lys Gln Ile	
85 90 95	
caa tcc cag tgg aaa gaa ttt ggc ctg gat tct gtt gag cta gca cat	336
Gln Ser Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly Leu Asp Ser Val Glu Leu Ala His	
100 105 110	
tat gat gtc ctg ttg tcc tac cca aat aag act cat ccc aac tac atc	384
Tyr Asp Val Leu Leu Ser Tyr Pro Asn Lys Thr His Pro Asn Tyr Ile	
115 120 125	
tca ata att aat gaa gat gga aat gag att ttc aac aca tca tta ttt	432
Ser Ile Ile Asn Glu Asp Gly Asn Glu Ile Phe Asn Thr Ser Leu Phe	
130 135 140	
gaa cca cct cct cca gga tat gaa aat gtt tcc gat att gta cca cct	480
Glu Pro Pro Pro Pro Gly Tyr Glu Asn Val Ser Asp Ile Val Pro Pro	
145 150 155 160	
ttc agt gct ttc tot cct caa gga atg cca gag ggc gat cta gtg tat	528
Phe Ser Ala Phe Ser Pro Gln Gly Met Pro Glu Gly Asp Leu Val Tyr	
165 170 175	
gtt aac tat gca cga act gaa gac ttc ttt aaa ttg gaa cgg gac atg	576
Val Asn Tyr Ala Arg Thr Glu Asp Phe Phe Lys Leu Glu Arg Asp Met	
180 185 190	
aaa atc aat tgc tot ggg aaa att gta att gcc aga tat ggg aaa gtt	624
Lys Ile Asn Cys Ser Gly Lys Ile Val Ile Ala Arg Tyr Gly Lys Val	
195 200 205	
ttc aga gga aat aag gtt aaa aat gcc cag ctg gca ggg gcc aaa gga	672
Phe Arg Gly Asn Lys Val Lys Asn Ala Gln Leu Ala Gly Ala Lys Gly	
210 215 220	
gtc att ctc tac tcc gac cct gct gac tac ttt gct cct ggg gtg aag	720
Val Ile Leu Tyr Ser Asp Pro Ala Asp Tyr Phe Ala Pro Gly Val Lys	
225 230 235 240	

tcg tat cca gat ggt tgg aat ctt cct gga ggt ggt gtc cag cgt gga	768
Ser Tyr Pro Asp Gly Trp Asn Leu Pro Gly Gly Gly Val Gln Arg Gly	
245 250 255	
aat atc cta aat ctg aat ggt gca gga gac cct ctc aca cca ggt tac	816
Asn Ile Leu Asn Leu Asn Gly Ala Gly Asp Pro Leu Thr Pro Gly Tyr	
260 265 270	
cca gca aat gaa tat gct tat agg cgt gga att gca gag gct gtc ggt	864
Pro Ala Asn Glu Tyr Ala Tyr Arg Arg Gly Ile Ala Glu Ala Val Gly	
275 280 285	
ctt cca agt att cct gtt cat cca att gga tac tat gat gca cag aag	912
Leu Pro Ser Ile Pro Val His Pro Ile Gly Tyr Tyr Asp Ala Gln Lys	
290 295 300	
ctc cta gaa aaa atg ggt ggc tca gca cca cca gat agc agc tgg aga	960
Leu Leu Glu Lys Met Gly Gly Ser Ala Pro Pro Asp Ser Ser Trp Arg	
305 310 315 320	
gga agt ctc aaa gtg ccc tac aat gtt gga cct ggc ttt act gga aac	1008
Gly Ser Leu Lys Val Pro Tyr Asn Val Gly Pro Gly Phe Thr Gly Asn	
325 330 335	
ttt tct aca caa aaa gtc aag atg cac atc cac tct acc aat gaa gtg	1056
Phe Ser Thr Gln Lys Val Lys Met His Ile His Ser Thr Asn Glu Val	
340 345 350	
aca aga att tac aat gtg ata ggt act ctc aga gga gca gtg gaa cca	1104
Thr Arg Ile Tyr Asn Val Ile Gly Thr Leu Arg Gly Ala Val Glu Pro	
355 360 365	
gac aga tat gtc att ctg gga ggt cac cgg gac tca tgg gtg ttt ggt	1152
Asp Arg Tyr Val Ile Leu Gly Gly His Arg Asp Ser Trp Val Phe Gly	
370 375 380	
ggt att gac cct cag agt gga gca gct gtt gtt cat gaa att gtg agg	1200
Gly Ile Asp Pro Gln Ser Gly Ala Ala Val Val His Glu Ile Val Arg	
385 390 395 400	
agc ttt gga aca ctg aaa aag gaa ggg tgg aga cct aga aga aca att	1248
Ser Phe Gly Thr Leu Lys Lys Glu Gly Trp Arg Pro Arg Arg Thr Ile	
405 410 415	
ttg ttt gca agc tgg gat gca gaa gaa ttt ggt ctt ctt ggt tct act	1296
Leu Phe Ala Ser Trp Asp Ala Glu Glu Phe Gly Leu Leu Gly Ser Thr	
420 425 430	
gag tgg gca gag gag aat tca aga ctc ctt caa gag cgt ggc gtg gtt	1344
Glu Trp Ala Glu Glu Asn Ser Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly Val Ala	
435 440 445	

tat att aat gct gac tca tct ata gaa gga aac tac act ctg aga gtt	1392
Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu Arg Val	
450 455 460	
gat tgt aca cgg ctg atg tac agc ttg gta cac aac cta aca aaa gag	1440
Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser Leu Val His Asn Leu Thr Lys Glu	
465 470 475 480	
ctg aaa agc cct gat gaa ggc ttt gaa ggc aaa tct ctt tat gaa agt	1488
Leu Lys Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr Glu Ser	
485 490 495	
tgg act aaa aaa agt cct tcc cca gag ttc agt ggc atg ccc agg ata	1536
Trp Thr Lys Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro Glu Phe Ser Gly Met Pro Arg Ile	
500 505 510	
agc aaa ttg gga tct gga aat gat ttt gag gtg ttc ttc caa cga ctt	1584
Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln Arg Leu	
515 520 525	
gga att gct tca ggc aga gca cgg tat act aaa aat tgg gaa aca aac	1632
Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Glu Thr Asn	
530 535 540	
aaa ttc agc ggc tat cca ctg tat cac agt gtc tat gaa aca tat gag	1680
Lys Phe Ser Gly Tyr Pro Leu Tyr His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr Tyr Glu	
545 550 555 560	
ttg gtg gaa aag ttt tat gat cca atg ttt aaa tat cac ctg act gtg	1728
Leu Val Glu Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro Met Phe Lys Tyr His Leu Thr Val	
565 570 575	
gcc cag gtt cga gga ggg atg gtg ttt gag cta gcc aat tcc ata gtg	1776
Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Gly Met Val Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser Ile Val	
580 585 590	
ctc cct ttt gat tgt cga gat tat gct gta gtt tta aga aag tat gct	1824
Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Arg Asp Tyr Ala Val Val Leu Arg Lys Tyr Ala	
595 600 605	
gac aaa atc tac agt att tct atg aaa cat cca cag gaa atg aag aca	1872
Asp Lys Ile Tyr Ser Ile Ser Met Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met Lys Thr	
610 615 620	
tac agt gta tca ttt gat tca ctt ttt tct gca gta aag aat ttt aca	1920
Tyr Ser Val Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu Phe Ser Ala Val Lys Asn Phe Thr	
625 630 635 640	
gaa att gct tcc aag ttc agt gag aga ctg cag gac ttt gac aaa agc	1968
Glu Ile Ala Ser Lys Phe Ser Glu Arg Leu Gln Asp Phe Asp Lys Ser	
645 650 655	

aac cca ata gta tta aga atg atg aat gat caa ctc atg ttt ctg gaa 2016  
 Asn Pro Ile Val Leu Arg Met Met Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Phe Leu Glu  
                   660                                  665                                  670

aga gca ttt att gat cca tta ggg tta cca gac agg cct ttt tat agg 2064  
 Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly Leu Pro Asp Arg Pro Phe Tyr Arg  
                   675                                  680                                  685

cat gtc atc tat gct cca agc agc cac aac aag tat gca ggg gag tca 2112  
 His Val Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly Glu Ser  
                   690                                  695                                  700

ttc cca gga att tat gat gct ctg ttt gat att gaa agc aaa gtg gac 2160  
 Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu Phe Asp Ile Glu Ser Lys Val Asp  
 705                                  710                                  715                                  720

cct tcc aag gcc tgg gga gaa gtg aag aga cag att tat gtt gca gcc 2208  
 Pro Ser Lys Ala Trp Gly Glu Val Lys Arg Gln Ile Tyr Val Ala Ala  
                   725                                  730                                  735

ttc aca gtg cag gca gct gca gag act ttg agt gaa gta gcc taa 2253  
 Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Ala Glu Thr Leu Ser Glu Val Ala  
                   740                                  745                                  750

<210> 2

<211> 750

<212> PRT

<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 2

Met Gly Asn Leu Leu His Glu Thr Asp Ser Ala Val Ala Thr Ala Arg  
   1                                  5                                  10                                  15

Arg Pro Arg Trp Leu Cys Ala Gly Ala Leu Val Leu Ala Gly Gly Phe  
                   20                                  25                                  30

Phe Leu Leu Gly Phe Leu Phe Gly Trp Phe Ile Lys Ser Ser Asn Glu  
                   35                                  40                                  45

Ala Thr Asn Ile Thr Pro Lys His Asn Met Lys Ala Phe Leu Asp Glu  
                   50                                  55                                  60

Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr Gln Ile  
   65                                  70                                  75                                  80

Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Glu Gln Asn Phe Gln Leu Ala Lys Gln Ile  
                   85                                  90                                  95

Gln Ser Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly Leu Asp Ser Val Glu Leu Ala His  
                   100                                  105                                  110

Tyr	Asp	Val	Leu	Leu	Ser	Tyr	Pro	Asn	Lys	Thr	His	Pro	Asn	Tyr	Ile	115	120	125
Ser	Ile	Ile	Asn	Glu	Asp	Gly	Asn	Glu	Ile	Phe	Asn	Thr	Ser	Leu	Phe	130	135	140
Glu	Pro	Pro	Pro	Pro	Gly	Tyr	Glu	Asn	Val	Ser	Asp	Ile	Val	Pro	Pro	145	150	155
Phe	Ser	Ala	Phe	Ser	Pro	Gln	Gly	Met	Pro	Glu	Gly	Asp	Leu	Val	Tyr	165	170	175
Val	Asn	Tyr	Ala	Arg	Thr	Glu	Asp	Phe	Phe	Lys	Leu	Glu	Arg	Asp	Met	180	185	190
Lys	Ile	Asn	Cys	Ser	Gly	Lys	Ile	Val	Ile	Ala	Arg	Tyr	Gly	Lys	Val	195	200	205
Phe	Arg	Gly	Asn	Lys	Val	Lys	Asn	Ala	Gln	Leu	Ala	Gly	Ala	Lys	Gly	210	215	220
Val	Ile	Leu	Tyr	Ser	Asp	Pro	Ala	Asp	Tyr	Phe	Ala	Pro	Gly	Val	Lys	225	230	235
Ser	Tyr	Pro	Asp	Gly	Trp	Asn	Leu	Pro	Gly	Gly	Gly	Val	Gln	Arg	Gly	245	250	255
Asn	Ile	Leu	Asn	Leu	Asn	Gly	Ala	Gly	Asp	Pro	Leu	Thr	Pro	Gly	Tyr	260	265	270
Pro	Ala	Asn	Glu	Tyr	Ala	Tyr	Arg	Arg	Gly	Ile	Ala	Glu	Ala	Val	Gly	275	280	285
Leu	Pro	Ser	Ile	Pro	Val	His	Pro	Ile	Gly	Tyr	Tyr	Asp	Ala	Gln	Lys	290	295	300
Leu	Leu	Glu	Lys	Met	Gly	Gly	Ser	Ala	Pro	Pro	Asp	Ser	Ser	Trp	Arg	305	310	315
Gly	Ser	Leu	Lys	Val	Pro	Tyr	Asn	Val	Gly	Pro	Gly	Phe	Thr	Gly	Asn	325	330	335
Phe	Ser	Thr	Gln	Lys	Val	Lys	Met	His	Ile	His	Ser	Thr	Asn	Glu	Val	340	345	350
Thr	Arg	Ile	Tyr	Asn	Val	Ile	Gly	Thr	Leu	Arg	Gly	Ala	Val	Glu	Pro	355	360	365
Asp	Arg	Tyr	Val	Ile	Leu	Gly	Gly	His	Arg	Asp	Ser	Trp	Val	Phe	Gly	370	375	380
Gly	Ile	Asp	Pro	Gln	Ser	Gly	Ala	Ala	Val	Val	His	Glu	Ile	Val	Arg	385	390	395

Ser Phe Gly Thr Leu Lys Lys Glu Gly Trp Arg Pro Arg Arg Thr Ile  
 405 410 415  
 Leu Phe Ala Ser Trp Asp Ala Glu Glu Phe Gly Leu Leu Gly Ser Thr  
 420 425 430  
 Glu Trp Ala Glu Glu Asn Ser Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly Val Ala  
 435 440 445  
 Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu Arg Val  
 450 455 460  
 Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser Leu Val His Asn Leu Thr Lys Glu  
 465 470 475 480  
 Leu Lys Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr Glu Ser  
 485 490 495  
 Trp Thr Lys Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro Glu Phe Ser Gly Met Pro Arg Ile  
 500 505 510  
 Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln Arg Leu  
 515 520 525  
 Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Glu Thr Asn  
 530 535 540  
 Lys Phe Ser Gly Tyr Pro Leu Tyr His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr Tyr Glu  
 545 550 555 560  
 Leu Val Glu Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro Met Phe Lys Tyr His Leu Thr Val  
 565 570 575  
 Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Gly Met Val Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser Ile Val  
 580 585 590  
 Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Arg Asp Tyr Ala Val Val Leu Arg Lys Tyr Ala  
 595 600 605  
 Asp Lys Ile Tyr Ser Ile Ser Met Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met Lys Thr  
 610 615 620  
 Tyr Ser Val Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu Phe Ser Ala Val Lys Asn Phe Thr  
 625 630 635 640  
 Glu Ile Ala Ser Lys Phe Ser Glu Arg Leu Gln Asp Phe Asp Lys Ser  
 645 650 655  
 Asn Pro Ile Val Leu Arg Met Met Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Phe Leu Glu  
 660 665 670  
 Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly Leu Pro Asp Arg Pro Phe Tyr Arg  
 675 680 685

His Val Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly Glu Ser  
690 695 700

Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu Phe Asp Ile Glu Ser Lys Val Asp  
705 710 715 720

Pro Ser Lys Ala Trp Gly Glu Val Lys Arg Gln Ile Tyr Val Ala Ala  
725 730 735

Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Ala Glu Thr Leu Ser Glu Val Ala  
740 745 750

<210> 3

<211> 3768

<212> DNA

<213> Homo sapiens

<220>

<221> CDS

<222> (1)..(3768)

<400> 3

atg gag ctg gcg gcc ttg tgc cgc tgg ggg ctc ctc ctc gcc ctc ttg 48  
Met Glu Leu Ala Ala Leu Cys Arg Trp Gly Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Leu  
-20 -15 -10

ccc ccc gga gcc gcg agc acc caa gtg tgc acc ggc aca gac atg aag 96  
Pro Pro Gly Ala Ala Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys  
-5 -1 1 5

ctg cgg ctc cct gcc agt ccc gag acc cac ctg gac atg ctc cgc cac 144  
Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His  
10 15 20 25

ctc tac cag ggc tgc cag gtg gtg cag gga aac ctg gaa ctc acc tac 192  
Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr  
30 35 40

ctg ccc acc aat gcc agc ctg tcc ttc ctg cag gat atc cag gag gtg 240  
Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val  
45 50 55

cag ggc tac gtg ctc atc gct cac aac caa gtg agg cag gtc cca ctg 288  
Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu  
60 65 70

cag agg ctg cgg att gtg cga ggc acc cag ctc ttt gag gac aac tat 336  
Gln Arg Leu Arg Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr  
75 80 85

gac	ctg	gac	gtg	cta	gac	aat	gga	gac	cgg	ctg	aac	aat	acc	acc	cct	384
Ala	Leu	Ala	Val	Leu	Asp	Asn	Gly	Asp	Pro	Leu	Asn	Asn	Thr	Thr	Pro	
90					95				100						105	
gtc	aca	ggg	gac	taa	caa	gga	ggc	ctg	cgg	gag	ctg	cag	ctt	cga	agc	432
Val	Thr	Gly	Ala	Ser	Pro	Gly	Gly	Leu	Arg	Glu	Leu	Gln	Leu	Arg	Ser	
				110					115					120		
ctc	aca	gag	atc	ttg	aaa	gga	ggg	gtc	ttg	atc	cag	cgg	aac	ccc	cag	480
Leu	Thr	Glu	Ile	Leu	Lys	Gly	Gly	Val	Leu	Ile	Gln	Arg	Asn	Pro	Gln	
			125					130					135			
ctc	tgc	tac	cag	gac	acg	att	ttg	tgg	aag	gac	atc	ttc	cac	aag	aac	528
Leu	Cys	Tyr	Gln	Asp	Thr	Ile	Leu	Trp	Lys	Asp	Ile	Phe	His	Lys	Asn	
		140						145				150				
aac	cag	ctg	gct	ctc	aca	ctg	ata	gac	acc	aac	cgc	tct	cgg	gcc	tgc	576
Asn	Gln	Leu	Ala	Leu	Thr	Leu	Ile	Asp	Thr	Asn	Arg	Ser	Arg	Ala	Cys	
155						160					165					
cac	ccc	tgt	tct	cgg	atg	tgt	aag	ggc	taa	cgc	tgc	tgg	gga	gag	agt	624
His	Pro	Cys	Ser	Pro	Met	Cys	Lys	Gly	Ser	Arg	Cys	Trp	Gly	Glu	Ser	
170					175					180					185	
tct	gag	gat	tgt	cag	agc	ctg	acg	cgc	act	gtc	tgt	gcc	ggc	ggc	tgt	672
Ser	Glu	Asp	Cys	Gln	Ser	Leu	Thr	Arg	Thr	Val	Cys	Ala	Gly	Gly	Cys	
				190					195					200		
gac	cgc	tgc	aag	ggg	caa	ctg	ccc	act	gac	tgc	tgc	cat	gag	cag	tgt	720
Ala	Arg	Cys	Lys	Gly	Pro	Leu	Pro	Thr	Asp	Cys	Cys	His	Glu	Gln	Cys	
			205					210					215			
gct	gcc	ggc	tgc	acg	ggc	ccc	aag	caa	tct	gac	tgc	ctg	gcc	tgc	ctc	768
Ala	Ala	Gly	Cys	Thr	Gly	Pro	Lys	His	Ser	Asp	Cys	Leu	Ala	Cys	Leu	
		220					225					230				
cac	ttc	aac	cac	agt	ggc	atc	tgt	gag	ctg	cac	tgc	cca	gcc	ctg	gtc	816
His	Phe	Asn	His	Ser	Gly	Ile	Cys	Glu	Leu	His	Cys	Pro	Ala	Leu	Val	
	235					240					245					
acc	tac	aac	aca	gac	acg	ttt	gag	taa	atg	ccc	aat	ccc	gag	ggc	cgg	864
Thr	Tyr	Asn	Thr	Asp	Thr	Phe	Glu	Ser	Met	Pro	Asn	Pro	Glu	Gly	Arg	
250					255				260					265		
tat	aca	ttc	ggc	gcc	agc	tgt	gtg	act	gcc	tgt	ccc	tac	aac	tac	ctt	912
Tyr	Thr	Phe	Gly	Ala	Ser	Cys	Val	Thr	Ala	Cys	Pro	Tyr	Asn	Tyr	Leu	
				270				275						280		
tct	acg	gac	gtg	gga	taa	tgc	acc	ctc	gtc	tgc	ccc	ctg	cac	aac	caa	960
Ser	Thr	Asp	Val	Gly	Ser	Cys	Thr	Leu	Val	Cys	Pro	Leu	His	Asn	Gln	
			285					290					295			



gag gtg aca gca gag gat gga aca cag cgg tgt gag aag tgc agc aag	1008
Glu Val Thr Ala Glu Asp Gly Thr Gln Arg Cys Glu Lys Cys Ser Lys	
300 305 310	
ccc tgt gcc cga gtg tgc tat ggt ctg ggc atg gag cac ttg cga gag	1056
Pro Cys Ala Arg Val Cys Tyr Gly Leu Gly Met Glu His Leu Arg Glu	
315 320 325	
gtg agg gca gtc acc agt gcc aat atc cag gag ttt gct ggc tgc aag	1104
Val Arg Ala Val Thr Ser Ala Asn Ile Gln Glu Phe Ala Gly Cys Lys	
330 335 340 345	
aag atc ttt ggg agc ctg gca ttt ctg ccg gag agc ttt gat ggg gac	1152
Lys Ile Phe Gly Ser Leu Ala Phe Leu Pro Glu Ser Phe Asp Gly Asp	
350 355 360	
cca gcc tcc aac act gcc ccg ctg cag cca gag cag ctg caa gtg ttt	1200
Pro Ala Ser Asn Thr Ala Pro Leu Gln Pro Glu Gln Leu Gln Val Phe	
365 370 375	
gag act ctg gaa gag atc aca ggt tac cta tac atc tca gca tgg ccg	1248
Glu Thr Leu Glu Glu Ile Thr Gly Tyr Leu Tyr Ile Ser Ala Trp Pro	
380 385 390	
gac agc ctg cct gac ctg agc gtc ttc cag aac ctg caa gta atc ccg	1296
Asp Ser Leu Pro Asp Leu Ser Val Phe Gln Asn Leu Gln Val Ile Arg	
395 400 405	
gga cga att ctg cac aat gcc gcc tac tgg ctg acc ctg caa ggg ctg	1344
Gly Arg Ile Leu His Asn Gly Ala Tyr Ser Leu Thr Leu Gln Gly Leu	
410 415 420 425	
ggc atc agc tgg ctg ggg ctg ccg tca ctg agg gaa ctg ggc agt gga	1392
Gly Ile Ser Trp Leu Gly Leu Arg Ser Leu Arg Glu Leu Gly Ser Gly	
430 435 440	
ctg gcc ctg atc cac cat aac acc cac ctg tgc ttc gtg cac acg gtg	1440
Leu Ala Leu Ile His His Asn Thr His Leu Cys Phe Val His Thr Val	
445 450 455	
ccc tgg gac cag ctg ttt cgg aac ccg cac caa gct ctg ctg cac act	1488
Pro Trp Asp Gln Leu Phe Arg Asn Pro His Gln Ala Leu Leu His Thr	
460 465 470	
gcc aac cgg cca gag gac gag tgt gtg ggc gag ggc ctg gcc tgc cac	1536
Ala Asn Arg Pro Glu Asp Glu Cys Val Gly Glu Gly Leu Ala Cys His	
475 480 485	
cag ctg tgc gcc cga ggg cac tgc tgg ggt cca ggg ccc acc cag tgt	1584
Gln Leu Cys Ala Arg Gly His Cys Trp Gly Pro Gly Pro Thr Gln Cys	
490 495 500 505	

gtc aac tgc agc cag ttc ctt cgg ggc cag gag tgc gtg gag gaa tgc	1632
Val Asn Cys Ser Gln Phe Leu Arg Gly Gln Glu Cys Val Glu Glu Cys	
510 515 520	
aga gta ctg cag ggg ctc ccc agg gag tat gtg aat gcc agg cac tgt	1680
Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val Asn Ala Arg His Cys	
525 530 535	
ttg ccg tgc cac cct gag tgt cag ccc cag aat gcc tca gtg acc tgt	1728
Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys	
540 545 550	
ttt gga ccg gag gct gac cag tgt gtg gcc tgt gcc cac tat aag gac	1776
Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp	
555 560 565	
cct ccc ttc tgc gtg gcc cgc tgc ccc agc ggt gtg aaa cct gac ctc	1824
Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys Pro Asp Leu	
570 575 580 585	
tcc tac atg ccc atc tgg aag ttt cca gat gag gag gcc gca tgc cag	1872
Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu Gly Ala Cys Gln	
590 595 600	
cct tgc ccc atc aac tgc acc cac tcc tgt gtg gac ctg gat gac aag	1920
Pro Cys Pro Ile Asn Cys Thr His Ser Cys Val Asp Leu Asp Asp Lys	
605 610 615	
ggc tgc ccc gcc gag cag aga gcc agc cct ctg acg tcc atc gtc tct	1968
Gly Cys Pro Ala Glu Gln Arg Ala Ser Pro Leu Thr Ser Ile Val Ser	
620 625 630	
ggg gtg gtt gcc att ctg ctg gtc gtg gtc ttg ggg gtg gtc ttt ggg	2016
Ala Val Val Gly Ile Leu Leu Val Val Val Leu Gly Val Val Phe Gly	
635 640 645	
atc ctc atc aag cga cgg cag cag aag atc cgg aag tac acg atg cgg	2064
Ile Leu Ile Lys Arg Arg Gln Gln Lys Ile Arg Lys Tyr Thr Met Arg	
650 655 660 665	
aga ctg ctg cag gaa acg gag ctg gtg gag ccg ctg aca cct agc gga	2112
Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Thr Glu Leu Val Glu Pro Leu Thr Pro Ser Gly	
670 675 680	
ggg atg ccc aac cag gcc cag atg cgg atc ctg aaa gag acg gag ctg	2160
Ala Met Pro Asn Gln Ala Gln Met Arg Ile Leu Lys Glu Thr Glu Leu	
685 690 695	
agg aag gtg aag gtg ctt gga tct ggc gct ttt ggc aca gtc tac aag	2208
Arg Lys Val Lys Val Leu Gly Ser Gly Ala Phe Gly Thr Val Tyr Lys	
700 705 710	

ggc atc tgg atc cct cat ggg gag aat gtg aaa att cca gtg gcc atc	2256
Gly Ile Trp Ile Pro Asp Gly Glu Asn Val Lys Ile Pro Val Ala Ile	
715 720 725	
aaa gtg ttg agg gaa aac aca tcc ccc aaa gcc aac aaa gaa atc tta	2304
Lys Val Leu Arg Glu Asn Thr Ser Pro Lys Ala Asn Lys Glu Ile Leu	
730 735 740 745	
gac gaa gca tac gtg atg gct ggt gtg gcc tcc cca tat gtc tcc cgc	2352
Asp Glu Ala Tyr Val Met Ala Gly Val Gly Ser Pro Tyr Val Ser Arg	
750 755 760	
ctt ctg gcc atc tgc ctg aca tcc acg gtg cag ctg gtg aca cag ctt	2400
Leu Leu Gly Ile Cys Leu Thr Ser Thr Val Gln Leu Val Thr Gln Leu	
765 770 775	
atg ccc tat gcc tgc ctg tta gac cat gtc cgg gaa aac cgc gga cgc	2448
Met Pro Tyr Gly Cys Leu Leu Asp His Val Arg Glu Asn Arg Gly Arg	
780 785 790	
ctg gcc tcc cag gac ctg ctg aac tgg tgt atg cag att gcc aag ggg	2496
Leu Gly Ser Gln Asp Leu Leu Asn Trp Cys Met Gln Ile Ala Lys Gly	
795 800 805	
atg agc tac ctg gag gat gtg cgg ctg gta cac agg gac ttg gcc gct	2544
Met Ser Tyr Leu Glu Asp Val Arg Leu Val His Arg Asp Leu Ala Ala	
810 815 820 825	
cgg aac gtg ctg gtc aag agt ccc aac cat gtc aaa att aca gac ttc	2592
Arg Asn Val Leu Val Lys Ser Pro Asn His Val Lys Ile Thr Asp Phe	
830 835 840	
ggg ctg gct cgg ctg ctg gac att gac gag aca gag tac cat gca gat	2640
Gly Leu Ala Arg Leu Leu Asp Ile Asp Glu Thr Glu Tyr His Ala Asp	
845 850 855	
ggg gcc aag gtg ccc atc aag tgg atg gcc ctg gag tcc att ctg cgc	2688
Gly Gly Lys Val Pro Ile Lys Trp Met Ala Leu Glu Ser Ile Leu Arg	
860 865 870	
cgg cgg ttc acc cac cag agt gat gtg tgg agt tat ggt gtg act gtg	2736
Arg Arg Phe Thr His Gln Ser Asp Val Trp Ser Tyr Gly Val Thr Val	
875 880 885	
tgg gag ctg atg act att ggg gcc aaa cct tac gat ggg atc cca gcc	2784
Trp Glu Leu Met Thr Phe Gly Ala Lys Pro Tyr Asp Gly Ile Pro Ala	
890 895 900 905	
cgg gag atc cct gac ctg ctg gaa aag ggg gag cgg ctg ccc cag ccc	2832
Arg Glu Ile Pro Asp Leu Leu Glu Lys Gly Glu Arg Leu Pro Gln Pro	
910 915 920	

13

ccc atc tgc acc att gat gtc tac atg atc atg gtc aaa tgt tgg atg	2880
Pro Ile Cys Thr Ile Asp Val Tyr Met Ile Met Val Lys Cys Trp Met	
925 930 935	
att gac tct gaa tgt cgg cca aga ttc cgg gag ttg gtg tct gaa ttc	2938
Ile Asp Ser Glu Cys Arg Pro Arg Phe Arg Glu Leu Val Ser Glu Phe	
940 945 950	
tcc cgc atg gcc agg gac ccc cag cgc ttt gtg gtc atc cag aat gag	2976
Ser Arg Met Ala Arg Asp Pro Gln Arg Phe Val Val Ile Gln Asn Glu	
955 960 965	
gac ttg ggc cca gcc agt ccc ttg gac agc acc ttc tac cgg tca ctg	3024
Asp Leu Gly Pro Ala Ser Pro Leu Asp Ser Thr Phe Tyr Arg Ser Leu	
970 975 980 985	
ctg gag gac gat gac atg ggg gac ctg gtg gat gct gag gag tat ctg	3072
Leu Glu Asp Asp Asp Met Gly Asp Leu Val Asp Ala Glu Glu Tyr Leu	
990 995 1000	
gta ccc cag cag ggc ttc ttc tgt cca gac cct gcc ccg ggc gct ggg	3120
Val Pro Gln Gln Gly Phe Phe Cys Pro Asp Pro Ala Pro Gly Ala Gly	
1005 1010 1015	
ggc atg gtc cac cac agg cac cgc agc tca tct acc agg agt ggc ggt	3168
Gly Met Val His His Arg His Arg Ser Ser Ser Thr Arg Ser Gly Gly	
1020 1025 1030	
ggg gac ctg aca cta ggg ctg gag ccc tct gaa gag gag gcc ccc agg	3216
Gly Asp Leu Thr Leu Gly Leu Glu Pro Ser Glu Glu Glu Ala Pro Arg	
1035 1040 1045	
tct cca ctg gca ccc tcc gaa ggg gct ggc tcc gat gta ttt gat ggt	3264
Ser Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Glu Gly Ala Gly Ser Asp Val Phe Asp Gly	
1050 1055 1060 1065	
gac ctg gga atg ggg gca gcc aag ggg ctg caa agc ctc ccc aca cat	3312
Asp Leu Gly Met Gly Ala Ala Lys Gly Leu Gln Ser Leu Pro Thr His	
1070 1075 1080	
gac ccc agc cct cta cag cgg tac agt gag gac ccc aca gta ccc ctg	3360
Asp Pro Ser Pro Leu Gln Arg Tyr Ser Glu Asp Pro Thr Val Pro Leu	
1085 1090 1095	
ccc tct gag act gat ggc tac gtt gcc ccc ctg acc tgc agc ccc cag	3408
Pro Ser Glu Thr Asp Gly Tyr Val Ala Pro Leu Thr Cys Ser Pro Gln	
1100 1105 1110	
cct gaa tat gtg aac cag cca gat gtt cgg ccc cag ccc cct tgc ccc	3456
Pro Glu Tyr Val Asn Gln Pro Asp Val Arg Pro Gln Pro Pro Ser Pro	
1115 1120 1125	

14

cga gag ggc cct ctg cct gct gcc cga cct gct ggt gcc act ctg gaa 3504  
 Arg Glu Gly Pro Leu Pro Ala Ala Arg Pro Ala Gly Ala Thr Leu Glu  
 1130 1135 1140 1145

agg gcc aag act ctc tcc cca ggg aag aat ggg gtc gtc aaa gac gtt 3552  
 Arg Ala Lys Thr Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys Asn Gly Val Val Lys Asp Val  
 1150 1155 1160

ttt gcc ttt ggg ggt gcc gtg gag aac ccc gag tac ttg aca ccc cag 3600  
 Phe Ala Phe Gly Gly Ala Val Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr Leu Thr Pro Gln  
 1165 1170 1175

gga gga gct gcc cct cag ccc cac cct cct cct gcc ttc agc cca gcc 3648  
 Gly Gly Ala Ala Pro Gln Pro His Pro Pro Pro Ala Phe Ser Pro Ala  
 1180 1185 1190

ttc gac aac ctc tat tac tgg gac cag gac cca cca gag cgg ggg gct 3696  
 Phe Asp Asn Leu Tyr Tyr Trp Asp Gln Asp Pro Pro Glu Arg Gly Ala  
 1195 1200 1205

cca ccc agc acc ttc aaa ggg aca cct acg gca gag aac cca gag tac 3744  
 Pro Pro Ser Thr Phe Lys Gly Thr Pro Thr Ala Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr  
 1210 1215 1220 1225

ctg ggt ctg gac gtg cca gtg tga 3768  
 Leu Gly Leu Asp Val Pro Val  
 1230

&lt;210&gt; 4

&lt;211&gt; 1255

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Homo sapiens

&lt;400&gt; 4

Met Glu Leu Ala Ala Leu Cys Arg Trp Gly Leu Leu Leu Ala Leu Leu  
 1 5 10 15

Pro Pro Gly Ala Ala Ser Thr Gln Val Cys Thr Gly Thr Asp Met Lys  
 20 25 30

Leu Arg Leu Pro Ala Ser Pro Glu Thr His Leu Asp Met Leu Arg His  
 35 40 45

Leu Tyr Gln Gly Cys Gln Val Val Gln Gly Asn Leu Glu Leu Thr Tyr  
 50 55 60

Leu Pro Thr Asn Ala Ser Leu Ser Phe Leu Gln Asp Ile Gln Glu Val  
 65 70 75 80

Gln Gly Tyr Val Leu Ile Ala His Asn Gln Val Arg Gln Val Pro Leu  
 85 90 95

15

Gln Arg Leu Arg Ile Val Arg Gly Thr Gln Leu Phe Glu Asp Asn Tyr  
 100 105 110  
 Ala Leu Ala Val Leu Asp Asn Gly Asp Pro Leu Asn Asn Thr Thr Pro  
 115 120 125  
 Val Thr Gly Ala Ser Pro Gly Gly Leu Arg Glu Leu Gln Leu Arg Ser  
 130 135 140  
 Leu Thr Glu Ile Leu Lys Gly Gly Val Leu Ile Gln Arg Asn Pro Gln  
 145 150 155 160  
 Leu Cys Tyr Gln Asp Thr Ile Leu Trp Lys Asp Ile Phe His Lys Asn  
 165 170 175  
 Asn Gln Leu Ala Leu Thr Leu Ile Asp Thr Asn Arg Ser Arg Ala Cys  
 180 185 190  
 His Pro Cys Ser Pro Met Cys Lys Gly Ser Arg Cys Trp Gly Glu Ser  
 195 200 205  
 Ser Glu Asp Cys Gln Ser Leu Thr Arg Thr Val Cys Ala Gly Gly Cys  
 210 215 220  
 Ala Arg Cys Lys Gly Pro Leu Pro Thr Asp Cys Cys His Glu Gln Cys  
 225 230 235 240  
 Ala Ala Gly Cys Thr Gly Pro Lys His Ser Asp Cys Leu Ala Cys Leu  
 245 250 255  
 His Phe Asn His Ser Gly Ile Cys Glu Leu His Cys Pro Ala Leu Val  
 260 265 270  
 Thr Tyr Asn Thr Asp Thr Phe Glu Ser Met Pro Asn Pro Glu Gly Arg  
 275 280 285  
 Tyr Thr Phe Gly Ala Ser Cys Val Thr Ala Cys Pro Tyr Asn Tyr Leu  
 290 295 300  
 Ser Thr Asp Val Gly Ser Cys Thr Leu Val Cys Pro Leu His Asn Gln  
 305 310 315 320  
 Glu Val Thr Ala Glu Asp Gly Thr Gln Arg Cys Glu Lys Cys Ser Lys  
 325 330 335  
 Pro Cys Ala Arg Val Cys Tyr Gly Leu Gly Met Glu His Leu Arg Glu  
 340 345 350  
 Val Arg Ala Val Thr Ser Ala Asn Ile Gln Glu Phe Ala Gly Cys Lys  
 355 360 365  
 Lys Ile Phe Gly Ser Leu Ala Phe Leu Pro Glu Ser Phe Asp Gly Asp  
 370 375 380

15

Pro Ala Ser Asn Thr Ala Pro Leu Gln Pro Glu Gln Leu Gln Val Phe  
385 390 395 400

Glu Thr Leu Glu Glu Ile Thr Gly Tyr Leu Tyr Ile Ser Ala Trp Pro  
405 410 415

Asp Ser Leu Pro Asp Leu Ser Val Phe Gln Asn Leu Gln Val Ile Arg  
420 425 430

Gly Arg Ile Leu His Asn Gly Ala Tyr Ser Leu Thr Leu Gln Gly Leu  
435 440 445

Gly Ile Ser Trp Leu Gly Leu Arg Ser Leu Arg Glu Leu Gly Ser Gly  
450 455 460

Leu Ala Leu Ile His His Asn Thr His Leu Cys Phe Val His Thr Val  
465 470 475 480

Pro Trp Asp Gln Leu Phe Arg Asn Pro His Gln Ala Leu Leu His Thr  
485 490 495

Ala Asn Arg Pro Glu Asp Glu Cys Val Gly Glu Gly Leu Ala Cys His  
500 505 510

Gln Leu Cys Ala Arg Gly His Cys Trp Gly Pro Gly Pro Thr Gln Cys  
515 520 525

Val Asn Cys Ser Gln Phe Leu Arg Gly Gln Glu Cys Val Glu Glu Cys  
530 535 540

Arg Val Leu Gln Gly Leu Pro Arg Glu Tyr Val Asn Ala Arg His Cys  
545 550 555 560

Leu Pro Cys His Pro Glu Cys Gln Pro Gln Asn Gly Ser Val Thr Cys  
565 570 575

Phe Gly Pro Glu Ala Asp Gln Cys Val Ala Cys Ala His Tyr Lys Asp  
580 585 590

Pro Pro Phe Cys Val Ala Arg Cys Pro Ser Gly Val Lys Pro Asp Leu  
595 600 605

Ser Tyr Met Pro Ile Trp Lys Phe Pro Asp Glu Glu Gly Ala Cys Gln  
610 615 620

Pro Cys Pro Ile Asn Cys Thr His Ser Cys Val Asp Leu Asp Asp Lys  
625 630 635 640

Gly Cys Pro Ala Glu Gln Arg Ala Ser Pro Leu Thr Ser Ile Val Ser  
645 650 655

Ala Val Val Gly Ile Leu Leu Val Val Val Leu Gly Val Val Phe Gly  
660 665 670

Ile Leu Ile Lys Arg Arg Gln Gln Lys Ile Arg Lys Tyr Thr Met Arg  
 675 680 685  
 Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Thr Glu Leu Val Glu Pro Leu Thr Pro Ser Gly  
 690 695 700  
 Ala Met Pro Asn Gln Ala Gln Met Arg Ile Leu Lys Glu Thr Glu Leu  
 705 710 715 720  
 Arg Lys Val Lys Val Leu Gly Ser Gly Ala Phe Gly Thr Val Tyr Lys  
 725 730 735  
 Gly Ile Trp Ile Pro Asp Gly Glu Asn Val Lys Ile Pro Val Ala Ile  
 740 745 750  
 Lys Val Leu Arg Glu Asn Thr Ser Pro Lys Ala Asn Lys Glu Ile Leu  
 755 760 765  
 Asp Glu Ala Tyr Val Met Ala Gly Val Gly Ser Pro Tyr Val Ser Arg  
 770 775 780  
 Leu Leu Gly Ile Cys Leu Thr Ser Thr Val Gln Leu Val Thr Gln Leu  
 785 790 795 800  
 Met Pro Tyr Gly Cys Leu Leu Asp His Val Arg Glu Asn Arg Gly Arg  
 805 810 815  
 Leu Gly Ser Gln Asp Leu Leu Asn Trp Cys Met Gln Ile Ala Lys Gly  
 820 825 830  
 Met Ser Tyr Leu Glu Asp Val Arg Leu Val His Arg Asp Leu Ala Ala  
 835 840 845  
 Arg Asn Val Leu Val Lys Ser Pro Asn His Val Lys Ile Thr Asp Phe  
 850 855 860  
 Gly Leu Ala Arg Leu Leu Asp Ile Asp Glu Thr Glu Tyr His Ala Asp  
 865 870 875 880  
 Gly Gly Lys Val Pro Ile Lys Trp Met Ala Leu Glu Ser Ile Leu Arg  
 885 890 895  
 Arg Arg Phe Thr His Gln Ser Asp Val Trp Ser Tyr Gly Val Thr Val  
 900 905 910  
 Trp Glu Leu Met Thr Phe Gly Ala Lys Pro Tyr Asp Gly Ile Pro Ala  
 915 920 925  
 Arg Glu Ile Pro Asp Leu Leu Glu Lys Gly Glu Arg Leu Pro Gln Pro  
 930 935 940  
 Pro Ile Cys Thr Ile Asp Val Tyr Met Ile Met Val Lys Cys Trp Met  
 945 950 955 960



Ile Asp Ser Glu Cys Arg Pro Arg Phe Arg Glu Leu Val Ser Glu Phe  
 965 970 975  
 Ser Arg Met Ala Arg Asp Pro Gln Arg Phe Val Val Ile Gln Asn Glu  
 980 985 990  
 Asp Leu Gly Pro Ala Ser Pro Leu Asp Ser Thr Phe Tyr Arg Ser Leu  
 995 1000 1005  
 Leu Glu Asp Asp Asp Met Gly Asp Leu Val Asp Ala Glu Glu Tyr Leu  
 1010 1015 1020  
 Val Pro Gln Gln Gly Phe Phe Cys Pro Asp Pro Ala Pro Gly Ala Gly  
 1025 1030 1035 1040  
 Gly Met Val His His Arg His Arg Ser Ser Ser Thr Arg Ser Gly Gly  
 1045 1050 1055  
 Gly Asp Leu Thr Leu Gly Leu Glu Pro Ser Glu Glu Glu Ala Pro Arg  
 1060 1065 1070  
 Ser Pro Leu Ala Pro Ser Glu Gly Ala Gly Ser Asp Val Phe Asp Gly  
 1075 1080 1085  
 Asp Leu Gly Met Gly Ala Ala Lys Gly Leu Gln Ser Leu Pro Thr His  
 1090 1095 1100  
 Asp Pro Ser Pro Leu Gln Arg Tyr Ser Glu Asp Pro Thr Val Pro Leu  
 1105 1110 1115 1120  
 Pro Ser Glu Thr Asp Gly Tyr Val Ala Pro Leu Thr Cys Ser Pro Gln  
 1125 1130 1135  
 Pro Glu Tyr Val Asn Gln Pro Asp Val Arg Pro Gln Pro Pro Ser Pro  
 1140 1145 1150  
 Arg Glu Gly Pro Leu Pro Ala Ala Arg Pro Ala Gly Ala Thr Leu Glu  
 1155 1160 1165  
 Arg Ala Lys Thr Leu Ser Pro Gly Lys Asn Gly Val Val Lys Asp Val  
 1170 1175 1180  
 Phe Ala Phe Gly Gly Ala Val Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr Leu Thr Pro Gln  
 1185 1190 1195 1200  
 Gly Gly Ala Ala Pro Gln Pro His Pro Pro Pro Ala Phe Ser Pro Ala  
 1205 1210 1215  
 Phe Asp Asn Leu Tyr Tyr Trp Asp Gln Asp Pro Pro Glu Arg Gly Ala  
 1220 1225 1230  
 Pro Pro Ser Thr Phe Lys Gly Thr Pro Thr Ala Glu Asn Pro Glu Tyr  
 1235 1240 1245

Leu Gly Leu Asp Val Pro Val  
1250 1255

4210: 5  
4211: 648  
4212: DNA  
4213: Homo sapiens

4220:  
4221: CDS  
4222: (1)..(648)

4400: 5  
atg ggc agc ccc cgc tcc gcg ctg agc tgc ctg ctg ttg cac ttg ctg 46  
Met Gly Ser Pro Arg Ser Ala Leu Ser Cys Leu Leu Leu His Leu Leu  
1 5 10 15  
gtt ctc tgc ctc caa gcc cag gta act gtt cag tcc tca cct aat ttt 96  
Val Leu Cys Leu Gln Ala Gln Val Thr Val Gln Ser Ser Pro Asn Phe  
20 25 30  
aca cag cat gtg agg gag cag agc ctg gtg acg gat cag ctc agc cgc 144  
Thr Gln His Val Arg Glu Gln Ser Leu Val Thr Asp Gln Leu Ser Arg  
35 40 45  
cgc ctc atc cgg acc tac cag ctc tac agc cgc acc agc ggg aag cac 192  
Arg Leu Ile Arg Thr Tyr Gln Leu Tyr Ser Arg Thr Ser Gly Lys His  
50 55 60  
gtg cag gtc ctg gcc aac aag cgc atc aac gcc atg gca gaa gac gga 240  
Val Gln Val Leu Ala Asn Lys Arg Ile Asn Ala Met Ala Glu Asp Gly  
65 70 75 80  
gac ccc ttc gcg aag ctc att gtg gag acc gat act ttt gga agc aga 268  
Asp Pro Phe Ala Lys Leu Ile Val Glu Thr Asp Thr Phe Gly Ser Arg  
85 90 95  
gtc cga gtt cgc gcc gca gag aca ggt ctc tac atc tgc atg aac aag 336  
Val Arg Val Arg Gly Ala Glu Thr Gly Leu Tyr Ile Cys Met Asn Lys  
100 105 110  
aag ggg aag cta att gcc aag agc aac gcc aaa gcc aag gac tgc gta 384  
Lys Gly Lys Leu Ile Ala Lys Ser Asn Gly Lys Gly Lys Asp Cys Val  
115 120 125  
ttc aca gag atc gtg ctg gag aac aac tac acg gcg ctg cag aac gcc 432  
Phe Thr Glu Ile Val Leu Glu Asn Asn Tyr Thr Ala Leu Gln Asn Ala  
130 135 140

20

aag tac gag ggc tgg tac atg gcc ttt acc cgc aag ggc cgg ccc cgc 480  
 Lys Tyr Glu Gly Trp Tyr Met Ala Phe Thr Arg Lys Gly Arg Pro Arg  
 145 150 155 160

aag ggc tcc aag acg cgc cag cat cag cgc gag gtg cac ttc atg aag 528  
 Lys Gly Ser Lys Thr Arg Gln His Gln Arg Glu Val His Phe Met Lys  
 165 170 175

cgc ctg cgg cgg ggc cac cac acc acc gag cag agc ctg cgc ttc gag 576  
 Arg Leu Pro Arg Gly His His Thr Thr Glu Gln Ser Leu Arg Phe Glu  
 180 185 190

ttc ctg aac tac cgg ccc ttc acg cgc agc ctg cgc ggc agc cag agg 624  
 Phe Leu Asn Tyr Pro Pro Phe Thr Arg Ser Leu Arg Gly Ser Gln Arg  
 195 200 205

act tgg gcc ccg gag ccc cga tag 648  
 Thr Trp Ala Pro Glu Pro Arg  
 210 215

<210> 6  
 <211> 215  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens

<400> 6  
 Met Gly Ser Pro Arg Ser Ala Leu Ser Cys Leu Leu Leu His Leu Leu  
 1 5 10 15

Val Leu Cys Leu Gln Ala Gln Val Thr Val Gln Ser Ser Pro Asn Phe  
 20 25 30

Thr Gln His Val Arg Glu Gln Ser Leu Val Thr Asp Gln Leu Ser Arg  
 35 40 45

Arg Leu Ile Arg Thr Tyr Gln Leu Tyr Ser Arg Thr Ser Gly Lys His  
 50 55 60

Val Gln Val Leu Ala Asn Lys Arg Ile Asn Ala Met Ala Glu Asp Gly  
 65 70 75 80

Asp Pro Phe Ala Lys Leu Ile Val Glu Thr Asp Thr Phe Gly Ser Arg  
 85 90 95

Val Arg Val Arg Gly Ala Glu Thr Gly Leu Tyr Ile Cys Met Asn Lys  
 100 105 110

Lys Gly Lys Leu Ile Ala Lys Ser Asn Gly Lys Gly Lys Asp Cys Val  
 115 120 125

Phe Thr Glu Ile Val Leu Glu Asn Asn Tyr Thr Ala Leu Gln Asn Ala  
 130 135 140

21

Lys Tyr Glu Gly Trp Tyr Met Ala Phe Thr Arg Lys Gly Arg Pro Arg  
145 150 155 160

Lys Gly Ser Lys Thr Arg Gln His Gln Arg Glu Val His Phe Met Lys  
165 170 175

Arg Leu Pro Arg Gly His His Thr Thr Glu Gln Ser Leu Arg Phe Gln  
180 185 190

Phe Leu Asn Tyr Pro Pro Phe Thr Arg Ser Leu Arg Gly Ser Gln Arg  
195 200 205

Thr Trp Ala Pro Gln Pro Arg  
210 215

&lt;210&gt; 7

&lt;211&gt; 2256

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Mus musculus

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; CDS

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(2256)

&lt;400&gt; 7

atg tgg aac gca ctg cag gac aga gac tcc ggc gag gtc ctg gga cac 48  
Met Trp Asn Ala Leu Gln Asp Arg Asp Ser Ala Glu Val Leu Gly His  
1 5 10 15

ggc cag cgc tgg ctc cgt gtt ggg aca ctg gtg ctg gct tta acc gga 96  
Arg Gln Arg Trp Leu Arg Val Gly Thr Leu Val Leu Ala Leu Thr Gly  
20 25 30

acc ttc ctc att ggc ttc ctc ttt ggg tgg ttt ata aaa cct tcc aat 144  
Thr Phe Leu Ile Gly Phe Leu Phe Gly Trp Phe Ile Lys Pro Ser Asn  
35 40 45

gaa gct act ggt aat gtt tcc cat tct ggc atg aag aag gag ttt ttg 192  
Glu Ala Thr Gly Asn Val Ser His Ser Gly Met Lys Lys Glu Phe Leu  
50 55 60

cat gaa ttg aag gct gag aac atc aaa aaa ttt tta tac aat ttc aca 240  
His Glu Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr  
65 70 75 80

ogg aca cca cag ttg gca gga aca caa aat aat ttt gag ctt gca aag 288  
Arg Thr Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Gln Asn Asn Phe Glu Leu Ala Lys  
85 90 95

22

caa att cat gac cag tgg aaa gaa ttt ggc ctg gat ttg gtt gag tta	336
Gln Ile His Asp Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly Leu Asp Leu Val Glu Leu	
100 105 110	
tec cat tac gat gtc ttg ctg tcc tat cca aat aaa aac cat cct aac	384
Ser His Tyr Asp Val Leu Leu Ser Tyr Pro Asn Lys Thr His Pro Asn	
115 120 125	
tat atc tca ata att aat gaa gat gga aat gag att ttc aaa aca tca	432
Tyr Ile Ser Ile Ile Asn Glu Asp Gly Asn Glu Ile Phe Lys Thr Ser	
130 135 140	
tta tct gaa cag cca ccc cca gga tat gag aat ata tca gat gta gtg	480
Leu Ser Glu Gln Pro Pro Gly Tyr Glu Asn Ile Ser Asp Val Val	
145 150 155 160	
cca cca tac agt gcc ttc tct cca caa ggg aca cca gag ggt gat cta	528
Pro Pro Tyr Ser Ala Phe Ser Pro Gln Gly Thr Pro Glu Gly Asp Leu	
165 170 175	
gtg tat gtc aac tat gca cga act gaa gac ttc ttt aaa ctg gaa cgg	576
Val Tyr Val Asn Tyr Ala Arg Thr Glu Asp Phe Phe Lys Leu Glu Arg	
180 185 190	
gaa atg aag atc agt tgt tct ggg aag att gtg att gcc aga tat ggg	624
Glu Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Ser Gly Lys Ile Val Ile Ala Arg Tyr Gly	
195 200 205	
aaa gtg ttc aga gga aat atg gtt aaa aat gct cca ctg gca ggg gca	672
Lys Val Phe Arg Gly Asn Met Val Lys Asn Ala Gln Leu Ala Gly Ala	
210 215 220	
aaa gga atg att ctg tac tca gac cct gct gac tac ttt gtt cct ggc	720
Lys Gly Met Ile Leu Tyr Ser Asp Pro Ala Asp Tyr Phe Val Pro Ala	
225 230 235 240	
gtg aag tcc tat cca gat ggc tgg aac ctg cct gga ggt ggt gtc caa	768
Val Lys Ser Tyr Pro Asp Gly Trp Asn Leu Pro Gly Gly Gly Val Gln	
245 250 255	
cgt gga aat gtc tta aat ctt aat ggt gca ggt gac ccg ctg aca cca	816
Arg Gly Asn Val Leu Asn Leu Asn Gly Ala Gly Asp Pro Leu Thr Pro	
260 265 270	
ggc tac cca gca aat gaa cat gct tat agg cat gag ttg aca aac gct	864
Gly Tyr Pro Ala Asn Glu His Ala Tyr Arg His Glu Leu Thr Asn Ala	
275 280 285	
gct ggc ctt cca agt att cct gtc cat cct att gga tat gat gat gca	912
Val Gly Leu Pro Ser Ile Pro Val His Pro Ile Gly Tyr Asp Asp Ala	
290 295 300	

23

cag aaa ctc tta gaa cac atg ggt ggt cca gca ccc cct gac agt agc	960
Gln Lys Leu Leu Glu His Met Gly Gly Pro Ala Pro Pro Asp Ser Ser	
305 310 315 320	
tgq aag gga gga tta aaa gtg cct tac aac gtg gaa cct ggc ttt ggt	1008
Trp Lys Gly Gly Leu Lys Val Pro Tyr Asn Val Gly Pro Gly Phe Ala	
325 330 335	
gga aac ttt tca aca caa aag gtc aag atg cat att cac cct tac act	1056
Gly Asn Phe Ser Thr Gln Lys Val Lys Met His Ile His Ser Tyr Thr	
340 345 350	
aaa gtg aca aga atc tat aat gtc att ggc acc ctc aaa gga gct ctg	1104
Lys Val Thr Arg Ile Tyr Asn Val Ile Gly Thr Leu Lys Gly Ala Leu	
355 360 365	
gaa cca gac aga tat gtt att ctt gga ggt cac cga gac gct tgg gta	1152
Glu Pro Asp Arg Tyr Val Ile Leu Gly Gly His Arg Asp Ala Trp Val	
370 375 380	
ttt ggt ggc att gac cct cag agt gga gca gct gtt gtt cat gaa att	1200
Phe Gly Gly Ile Asp Pro Gln Ser Gly Ala Ala Val Val His Glu Ile	
385 390 395 400	
gtg cgg agc ttt gga acc ctg aag aag aaa gga cgg agg cct aga agg	1248
Val Arg Ser Phe Gly Thr Leu Lys Lys Lys Gly Arg Arg Pro Arg Arg	
405 410 415	
aca att ttg ttt gca agc tgg gat gca gaa gaa ttt ggc ctt ctt ggt	1296
Thr Ile Leu Phe Ala Ser Trp Asp Ala Glu Glu Phe Gly Leu Leu Gly	
420 425 430	
tct act gag tgg gca gag gaa cat tca aga ctc cta caa gag cga ggt	1344
Ser Thr Glu Trp Ala Glu Glu His Ser Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly	
435 440 445	
gtg gct tat att aat gct gat tct tcc ata gaa gga aat tac act cta	1392
Val Ala Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu	
450 455 460	
aga gtt gat tgc aca cca ctg atg tac agc tta gtg tac aac cta aca	1440
Arg Val Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser Leu Val Tyr Asn Leu Thr	
465 470 475 480	
aaa gag ctg caa agc cca gat gaa ggt ttt gaa gga aaa tct ctt tat	1488
Lys Glu Leu Gln Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr	
485 490 495	
gac agc tgg aaa gaa aag agt cct tca cct gag ttc att gga atg ccc	1536
Asp Ser Trp Lys Glu Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro Glu Phe Ile Gly Met Pro	
500 505 510	

aga att agc aag ctg ggg tct ggc aat gat ttt gaa gtg ttc ttc caa	1584
Arg Ile Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln	
515 520 525	
aga ctt gga att gct tca ggc aga gcc cga tat cct aaa aat tgg aaa	1630
Arg Leu Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Lys	
530 535 540	
act aac aaa gtc agc agc tat cct ctc tat cac agt gtc tat gaa aca	1680
Thr Asn Lys Val Ser Ser Tyr Pro Leu Tyr His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr	
545 550 555 560	
tat gag ctg gta gta aaa ttt tat gac cca aca ttt aaa tac cac ctc	1725
Tyr Glu Leu Val Val Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro Thr Phe Lys Tyr His Leu	
565 570 575	
act gtg gcc cag gtt cga gga ggc atg gta ttt gaa ctt gcc aat tct	1775
Thr Val Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Ala Met Val Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser	
580 585 590	
ata gtg ctt ccc ttt gac tgc caa agt tat gct gta gct ctg aag aag	1824
Ile Val Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Gln Ser Tyr Ala Val Ala Leu Lys Lys	
595 600 605	
tat gct gac act atc tac aat att tca atg aaa cat cca caa gaa atg	1872
Tyr Ala Asp Thr Ile Tyr Asn Ile Ser Met Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met	
610 615 620	
aag gct tac atg ata tca ttt gat tca ctg ttt tct gca gtc aat aat	1920
Lys Ala Tyr Met Ile Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu Phe Ser Ala Val Asn Asn	
625 630 635 640	
ttt aca gat gtt gca tct aag ttc aat cag aga ctg caa gag tta gac	1968
Phe Thr Asp Val Ala Ser Lys Phe Asn Gln Arg Leu Gln Glu Leu Asp	
645 650 655	
aaa agc aac ccc ata tta ctg aga att atg aat gac cag ctg atg tat	2016
Lys Ser Asn Pro Ile Leu Leu Arg Ile Met Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Tyr	
660 665 670	
ctg gaa cgt gca ttc att gat cct tta ggc tta cca gga agg cct ttc	2064
Leu Glu Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly Leu Pro Gly Arg Pro Phe	
675 680 685	
tac agg cat acc atc tat gct cca agc agc cac aac aag tat gca gga	2112
Tyr Arg His Thr Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly	
690 695 700	
gaa tca ttc cct ggg att tat gat gcc ctt ttt gat ata agt agc aaa	2160
Glu Ser Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu Phe Asp Ile Ser Ser Lys	
705 710 715 720	

25

gtc aat gct tct aag gcc tgg aac gaa gtg aag aga bag att tct att 2208  
 Val Asn Ala Ser Lys Ala Trp Asn Glu Val Lys Arg Gln Ile Ser Ile  
                   725                  730                  735

gca acc ttt aca gtg caa gct gca gca gag aat ctg aag gaa gta gct 2256  
 Ala Thr Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Glu Thr Leu Arg Glu Val Ala  
                   740                  745                  750

2210: 6  
 2211: 752  
 2212: FRT  
 2213: Mus musculus

2400: 6  
 Met Trp Asn Ala Leu Gln Asp Arg Asp Ser Ala Glu Val Leu Gly His  
       1                  5                  10                  15

Arg Gln Arg Trp Leu Arg Val Gly Thr Leu Val Leu Ala Leu Thr Gly  
                   20                  25                  30

Thr Phe Leu Ile Gly Phe Leu Phe Gly Trp Phe Ile Lys Pro Ser Asn  
                   35                  40                  45

Glu Ala Thr Gly Asn Val Ser His Ser Gly Met Lys Lys Glu Phe Leu  
                   50                  55                  60

His Glu Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr  
                   65                  70                  75                  80

Arg Thr Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Gln Asn Asn Phe Glu Leu Ala Lys  
                   85                  90                  95

Gln Ile His Asp Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly Leu Asp Leu Val Glu Leu  
                   100                  105                  110

Ser His Tyr Asp Val Leu Leu Ser Tyr Pro Asn Lys Thr His Pro Asn  
                   115                  120                  125

Tyr Ile Ser Ile Ile Asn Glu Asp Gly Asn Glu Ile Phe Lys Thr Ser  
                   130                  135                  140

Leu Ser Glu Gln Pro Pro Pro Gly Tyr Glu Asn Ile Ser Asp Val Val  
                   145                  150                  155                  160

Pro Pro Tyr Ser Ala Phe Ser Pro Gln Gly Thr Pro Glu Gly Asp Leu  
                   165                  170                  175

Val Tyr Val Asn Tyr Ala Arg Thr Glu Asp Phe Phe Lys Leu Glu Arg  
                   180                  185                  190

Glu Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Ser Gly Lys Ile Val Ile Ala Arg Tyr Gly  
                   195                  200                  205



26

Lys Val Phe Arg Gly Asn Met Val Lys Asn Ala Gln Leu Ala Gly Ala  
 210 215 220

Lys Gly Met Ile Leu Tyr Ser Asp Pro Ala Asp Tyr Phe Val Pro Ala  
 225 230 235 240

Val Lys Ser Tyr Pro Asp Gly Trp Asn Leu Pro Gly Gly Gly Val Gln  
 245 250 255

Arg Gly Asn Val Leu Asn Leu Asn Gly Ala Gly Asp Pro Leu Thr Pro  
 260 265 270

Gly Tyr Pro Ala Asn Glu His Ala Tyr Arg His Glu Leu Thr Asn Ala  
 275 280 285

Val Gly Leu Pro Ser Ile Pro Val His Pro Ile Gly Tyr Asp Asp Ala  
 290 295 300

Gln Lys Leu Leu Glu His Met Gly Gly Pro Ala Pro Pro Asp Ser Ser  
 305 310 315 320

Trp Lys Gly Gly Leu Lys Val Pro Tyr Asn Val Gly Pro Gly Phe Ala  
 325 330 335

Gly Asn Phe Ser Thr Gln Lys Val Lys Met His Ile His Ser Tyr Thr  
 340 345 350

Lys Val Thr Arg Ile Tyr Asn Val Ile Gly Thr Leu Lys Gly Ala Leu  
 355 360 365

Glu Pro Asp Arg Tyr Val Ile Leu Gly Gly His Arg Asp Ala Trp Val  
 370 375 380

Phe Gly Gly Ile Asp Pro Gln Ser Gly Ala Ala Val Val His Glu Ile  
 385 390 395 400

Val Arg Ser Phe Gly Thr Leu Lys Lys Lys Gly Arg Arg Pro Arg Arg  
 405 410 415

Thr Ile Leu Phe Ala Ser Trp Asp Ala Glu Glu Phe Gly Leu Leu Gly  
 420 425 430

Ser Thr Glu Trp Ala Glu Glu His Ser Arg Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly  
 435 440 445

Val Ala Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu  
 450 455 460

Arg Val Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser Leu Val Tyr Asn Leu Thr  
 465 470 475 480

Lys Glu Leu Gln Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr  
 485 490 495

27

Asp Ser Trp Lys Glu Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro Glu Phe Ile Gly Met Pro  
 500 505 510  
 Arg Ile Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln  
 515 520 525  
 Arg Leu Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Lys  
 530 535 540  
 Thr Asn Lys Val Ser Ser Tyr Pro Leu Tyr His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr  
 545 550 555 560  
 Tyr Glu Leu Val Val Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro Thr Phe Lys Tyr His Leu  
 565 570 575  
 Thr Val Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Ala Met Val Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser  
 580 585 590  
 Ile Val Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Gln Ser Tyr Ala Val Ala Leu Lys Lys  
 595 600 605  
 Tyr Ala Asp Thr Ile Tyr Asn Ile Ser Met Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met  
 610 615 620  
 Lys Ala Tyr Met Ile Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu Phe Ser Ala Val Asn Asn  
 625 630 635 640  
 Phe Thr Asp Val Ala Ser Lys Phe Asn Gln Arg Leu Gln Glu Leu Asp  
 645 650 655  
 Lys Ser Asn Pro Ile Leu Leu Arg Ile Met Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Tyr  
 660 665 670  
 Leu Glu Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly Leu Pro Gly Arg Pro Phe  
 675 680 685  
 Tyr Arg His Thr Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly  
 690 695 700  
 Glu Ser Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu Phe Asp Ile Ser Ser Lys  
 705 710 715 720  
 Val Asn Ala Ser Lys Ala Trp Asn Glu Val Lys Arg Gln Ile Ser Ile  
 725 730 735  
 Ala Thr Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Ala Glu Thr Leu Arg Glu Val Ala  
 740 745 750

&lt;210&gt; 9

&lt;211&gt; 2082

&lt;212&gt; DNA

<213> Mus musculus

<220>

<221> CDS

<222> (1)..(2082)

<400> 9

```

atg aag aag gag ttt ttg cat gaa ttg aag gct gag aac atc aaa aaa 48
Met Lys Lys Glu Phe Leu His Glu Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys
  1             5             10             15

ttt tta tac aat ttc aca cgg aca cca cac ttg gca gga aca caa aat 96
Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr Arg Thr Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Gln Asn
          20             25             30

aat ttt gag ctt gca aag caa att cat gac cag tgg aaa gaa ttt ggc 144
Asn Phe Glu Leu Ala Lys Gln Ile His Asp Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly
          35             40             45

ctg gat ttg gtt gag tta tcc cat tac gat gtc ttg ctg tcc tat cca 192
Leu Asp Leu Val Glu Leu Ser His Tyr Asp Val Leu Leu Ser Tyr Pro
          50             55             60

aat aaa act cat cct aac tat atc tca ata att aat gaa gat gga aat 240
Asn Lys Thr His Pro Asn Tyr Ile Ser Ile Ile Asn Glu Asp Gly Asn
  65             70             75             80

gag att ttc aaa aca tca tta tct gaa cag cca ccc cca gga tat gag 288
Glu Ile Phe Lys Thr Ser Leu Ser Glu Gln Pro Pro Pro Gly Tyr Glu
          85             90             95

aat ata tca gat gta gtg cca cca tac agt gcc ttc tct cca caa ggc 336
Asn Ile Ser Asp Val Val Pro Pro Tyr Ser Ala Phe Ser Pro Gln Gly
          100            105            110

aca cca gag ggt gat cta gtg tat gtc aac tat gca cga act gaa gac 384
Thr Pro Glu Gly Asp Leu Val Tyr Val Asn Tyr Ala Arg Thr Glu Asp
          115            120            125

ttc ttt aaa ctg gaa cgg gaa atg aag atc agt tgt tct ggg aag att 432
Phe Phe Lys Leu Glu Arg Glu Met Lys Ile Ser Cys Ser Gly Lys Ile
          130            135            140

gtg att gcc aga tat ggg aaa gtg ttc aga gga aat atg gtt aaa aat 480
Val Ile Ala Arg Tyr Gly Lys Val Phe Arg Gly Asn Met Val Lys Asn
          145            150            155            160

gct caa ctg gca ggg gca aaa gga atg att ctg tac tca gac cct gct 528
Ala Gln Leu Ala Gly Ala Lys Gly Met Ile Leu Tyr Ser Asp Pro Ala
          165            170            175

```

29

gac tac ttt gtt cct ggg gtg aag tcc tat cca gat ggc tgg aac ctc	576
Asp Tyr Phe Val Pro Ala Val Lys Ser Tyr Pro Asp Gly Trp Asn Leu	
180 195 190	
cct gga ggt ggt gtc cca cgt gga aat gtc tta aat ctt aat ggt gca	624
Pro Gly Gly Gly Val Gln Arg Gly Asn Val Leu Asn Leu Asn Gly Ala	
195 210 205	
ggt gac ccg ctc aca cca ggt tac cca gca aat gaa cat gct tat agg	672
Gly Asp Pro Leu Thr Pro Gly Tyr Pro Ala Asn Glu His Ala Tyr Arg	
210 215 220	
cat gag ttg aca aac gct gtt ggc ctt cca agt att cct gtc cat cct	720
His Glu Leu Thr Asn Ala Val Gly Leu Pro Ser Ile Pro Val His Pro	
225 230 235 240	
att gga tat gat gat gca cag aaa ctc tta gaa cac atg ggt ggt cca	768
Ile Gly Tyr Asp Asp Ala Gln Lys Leu Leu Glu His Met Gly Gly Pro	
245 250 255	
gca ccc cct gac agt agc tgg aag gga gga tta aaa gtg cct tac aac	816
Ala Pro Pro Asp Ser Ser Trp Lys Gly Gly Leu Lys Val Pro Tyr Asn	
260 265 270	
gtg gga cct ggc ttt gct gga aac ttt tca aca cca aag gtc aag atg	864
Val Gly Pro Gly Phe Ala Gly Asn Phe Ser Thr Gln Lys Val Lys Met	
275 280 285	
cat att cac tct tac act aaa gtg aca aga atc tat aat gtc att ggc	912
His Ile His Ser Tyr Thr Lys Val Thr Arg Ile Tyr Asn Val Ile Gly	
290 295 300	
acc ctc aaa gga gct ctg gaa cca gac aga tat gtt att ctt gga ggt	960
Thr Leu Lys Gly Ala Leu Glu Pro Asp Arg Tyr Val Ile Leu Gly Gly	
305 310 315 320	
cac cga gac gct tgg gta ttt ggt ggc att gac cct cag agt gga gca	1008
His Arg Asp Ala Trp Val Phe Gly Gly Ile Asp Pro Gln Ser Gly Ala	
325 330 335	
gct gtt gtt cat gaa att gtg ccg agc ttt gga acc ctg aag aag aaa	1056
Ala Val Val His Glu Ile Val Arg Ser Phe Gly Thr Leu Lys Lys Lys	
340 345 350	
gga cgg agt cct aga agg aca att ttg ttt gca agc tgg gat gca gaa	1104
Gly Arg Arg Pro Arg Arg Thr Ile Leu Phe Ala Ser Trp Asp Ala Glu	
355 360 365	
gaa ttt ggc ctt ctt ggt tct act gag tgg gca gag gaa cat tca aga	1152
Glu Phe Gly Leu Leu Gly Ser Thr Glu Trp Ala Glu Glu His Ser Arg	
370 375 380	

30

ctc cta caa gag cga ggt gtg gct tat att aat gct gat tct tcc ata	1200
Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly Val Ala Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile	
385 390 395 400	
gaa gga aat tac act cta aga gtt gat tgc aca cca ctg atg tac agc	1248
Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu Arg Val Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser	
405 410 415	
tta gtg tac aac cta aca aaa gag ctg caa agc cca gat gaa ggt ttt	1296
Leu Val Tyr Asn Leu Thr Lys Glu Leu Gln Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe	
420 425 430	
gaa gga aaa tct ctt tat gac agc tgg aaa gaa aag agt cct tca cct	1344
Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr Asp Ser Trp Lys Glu Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro	
435 440 445	
gag ttc att gga atg ccc aga att agc aag ctg ggg tct ggc aat gat	1392
Glu Phe Ile Gly Met Pro Arg Ile Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp	
450 455 460	
ttt gaa gtg ttc ttc caa aga ctt gga att gct tca ggc aga gcc cga	1440
Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln Arg Leu Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg	
465 470 475 480	
tat act aaa aat tgg aaa act aac aaa gtc agc agc tat cct ctc tat	1488
Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Lys Thr Asn Lys Val Ser Ser Tyr Pro Leu Tyr	
485 490 495	
cac agt gtc tat gaa aca tat gag ctg gta gta aaa ttt tat gac cca	1536
His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr Tyr Glu Leu Val Val Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro	
500 505 510	
aca ttt aaa tac cac ctc act gtg gcc cag gtt cga gga gcg atg gta	1584
Thr Phe Lys Tyr His Leu Thr Val Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Ala Met Val	
515 520 525	
ttt gaa ctt gcc aat tct ata gtg ctt ccc ttt gac tgc caa agt tat	1632
Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser Ile Val Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Gln Ser Tyr	
530 535 540	
gct gta gct ctg aag aag tat gct gac act atc tac aat att tca atg	1680
Ala Val Ala Leu Lys Lys Tyr Ala Asp Thr Ile Tyr Asn Ile Ser Met	
545 550 555 560	
aaa cat cca caa gaa atg aag gct tac atg ata tca ttt gat tca ctg	1728
Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met Lys Ala Tyr Met Ile Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu	
565 570 575	
ttt tct gca gtc aat aat ttt aca gat gtt gca tct aag ttc aat cag	1776
Phe Ser Ala Val Asn Asn Phe Thr Asp Val Ala Ser Lys Phe Asn Gln	
580 585 590	

31

aga ctg caa gag tta gac aaa agc aac ccc ata tta ctg aga att atg 1824  
 Arg Leu Gln Glu Leu Asp Lys Ser Asn Pro Ile Leu Leu Arg Ile Met  
 595 600 605

aat gac cag ctg atg tat ctg gaa cgt gca ttc att gat cct tta ggc 1872  
 Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Tyr Leu Glu Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly  
 610 615 620

tta cca gga agg cct ttc tac agg cat acc atc tat gct cca agc agc 1920  
 Leu Pro Gly Arg Pro Phe Tyr Arg His Thr Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser  
 625 630 635 640

cac aac aag tat gca gga gaa tca ttc cct ggg att tat gat gcc ctt 1968  
 His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly Glu Ser Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu  
 645 650 655

ttt gat ata agt agc aaa gtc aat gct tct aag gcc tgg aac gaa gtg 2016  
 Phe Asp Ile Ser Ser Lys Val Asn Ala Ser Lys Ala Trp Asn Glu Val  
 660 665 670

aag aga cag att tct att gca acc ttt aca gtg caa gct gca gca gag 2064  
 Lys Arg Gln Ile Ser Ile Ala Thr Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Ala Glu  
 675 680 685

act ctg agg gaa gta gct 2082  
 Thr Leu Arg Glu Val Ala  
 690

&lt;E10&gt; 10

&lt;E11&gt; 694

&lt;E12&gt; PRT

&lt;E13&gt; Mus musculus

&lt;400&gt; 10

Met Lys Lys Glu Phe Leu His Glu Leu Lys Ala Glu Asn Ile Lys Lys  
 1 5 10 15

Phe Leu Tyr Asn Phe Thr Arg Thr Pro His Leu Ala Gly Thr Gln Asn  
 20 25 30

Asn Phe Glu Leu Ala Lys Gln Ile His Asp Gln Trp Lys Glu Phe Gly  
 35 40 45

Leu Asp Leu Val Glu Leu Ser His Tyr Asp Val Leu Leu Ser Tyr Pro  
 50 55 60

Asn Lys Thr His Pro Asn Tyr Ile Ser Ile Ile Asn Glu Asp Gly Asn  
 65 70 75 80

Glu Ile Phe Lys Thr Ser Leu Ser Glu Gln Pro Pro Pro Gly Tyr Glu  
 85 90 95

32

Asn	Ile	Ser	Asp	Val	Val	Pro	Pro	Tyr	Ser	Ala	Phe	Ser	Pro	Gln	Gly	100	105	110	
Thr	Pro	Glu	Gly	Asp	Leu	Val	Tyr	Val	Asn	Tyr	Ala	Arg	Thr	Glu	Asp	115	120	125	
Phe	Phe	Lys	Leu	Glu	Arg	Glu	Met	Lys	Ile	Ser	Cys	Ser	Gly	Lys	Ile	130	135	140	
Val	Ile	Ala	Arg	Tyr	Gly	Lys	Val	Phe	Arg	Gly	Asn	Met	Val	Lys	Asn	145	150	155	160
Ala	Gln	Leu	Ala	Gly	Ala	Lys	Gly	Met	Ile	Leu	Tyr	Ser	Asp	Pro	Ala	165	170	175	
Asp	Tyr	Phe	Val	Pro	Ala	Val	Lys	Ser	Tyr	Pro	Asp	Gly	Trp	Asn	Leu	180	185	190	
Pro	Gly	Gly	Gly	Val	Gln	Arg	Gly	Asn	Val	Leu	Asn	Leu	Asn	Gly	Ala	195	200	205	
Gly	Asp	Pro	Leu	Thr	Pro	Gly	Tyr	Pro	Ala	Asn	Glu	His	Ala	Tyr	Arg	210	215	220	
His	Glu	Leu	Thr	Asn	Ala	Val	Gly	Leu	Pro	Ser	Ile	Pro	Val	His	Pro	225	230	235	240
Ile	Gly	Tyr	Asp	Asp	Ala	Gln	Lys	Leu	Leu	Glu	His	Met	Gly	Gly	Pro	245	250	255	
Ala	Pro	Pro	Asp	Ser	Ser	Trp	Lys	Gly	Gly	Leu	Lys	Val	Pro	Tyr	Asn	260	265	270	
Val	Gly	Pro	Gly	Phe	Ala	Gly	Asn	Phe	Ser	Thr	Gln	Lys	Val	Lys	Met	275	280	285	
His	Ile	His	Ser	Tyr	Thr	Lys	Val	Thr	Arg	Ile	Tyr	Asn	Val	Ile	Gly	290	295	300	
Thr	Leu	Lys	Gly	Ala	Leu	Glu	Pro	Asp	Arg	Tyr	Val	Ile	Leu	Gly	Gly	305	310	315	320
His	Arg	Asp	Ala	Trp	Val	Phe	Gly	Gly	Ile	Asp	Pro	Gln	Ser	Gly	Ala	325	330	335	
Ala	Val	Val	His	Glu	Ile	Val	Arg	Ser	Phe	Gly	Thr	Leu	Lys	Lys	Lys	340	345	350	
Gly	Arg	Arg	Pro	Arg	Arg	Thr	Ile	Leu	Phe	Ala	Ser	Trp	Asp	Ala	Glu	355	360	365	
Glu	Phe	Gly	Leu	Leu	Gly	Ser	Thr	Glu	Trp	Ala	Glu	Glu	His	Ser	Arg	370	375	380	

Leu Leu Gln Glu Arg Gly Val Ala Tyr Ile Asn Ala Asp Ser Ser Ile  
385 390 395 400

Glu Gly Asn Tyr Thr Leu Arg Val Asp Cys Thr Pro Leu Met Tyr Ser  
405 410 415

Leu Val Tyr Asn Leu Thr Lys Glu Leu Gln Ser Pro Asp Glu Gly Phe  
420 425 430

Glu Gly Lys Ser Leu Tyr Asp Ser Trp Lys Glu Lys Ser Pro Ser Pro  
435 440 445

Glu Phe Ile Gly Met Pro Arg Ile Ser Lys Leu Gly Ser Gly Asn Asp  
450 455 460

Phe Glu Val Phe Phe Gln Arg Leu Gly Ile Ala Ser Gly Arg Ala Arg  
465 470 475 480

Tyr Thr Lys Asn Trp Lys Thr Asn Lys Val Ser Ser Tyr Pro Leu Tyr  
485 490 495

His Ser Val Tyr Glu Thr Tyr Glu Leu Val Val Lys Phe Tyr Asp Pro  
500 505 510

Thr Phe Lys Tyr His Leu Thr Val Ala Gln Val Arg Gly Ala Met Val  
515 520 525

Phe Glu Leu Ala Asn Ser Ile Val Leu Pro Phe Asp Cys Gln Ser Tyr  
530 535 540

Ala Val Ala Leu Lys Lys Tyr Ala Asp Thr Ile Tyr Asn Ile Ser Met  
545 550 555 560

Lys His Pro Gln Glu Met Lys Ala Tyr Met Ile Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu  
565 570 575

Phe Ser Ala Val Asn Asn Phe Thr Asp Val Ala Ser Lys Phe Asn Gln  
580 585 590

Arg Leu Gln Glu Leu Asp Lys Ser Asn Pro Ile Leu Leu Arg Ile Met  
595 600 605

Asn Asp Gln Leu Met Tyr Leu Glu Arg Ala Phe Ile Asp Pro Leu Gly  
610 615 620

Leu Pro Gly Arg Pro Phe Tyr Arg His Thr Ile Tyr Ala Pro Ser Ser  
625 630 635 640

His Asn Lys Tyr Ala Gly Glu Ser Phe Pro Gly Ile Tyr Asp Ala Leu  
645 650 655

Phe Asp Ile Ser Ser Lys Val Asn Ala Ser Lys Ala Trp Asn Glu Val  
660 665 670



34

Lys Arg Gln Ile Ser Ile Ala Thr Phe Thr Val Gln Ala Ala Ala Glu  
 675 680 685

Thr Leu Arg Glu Val Ala  
 690

<210> 11  
 <211> 45  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Clostridium tetani

<220>  
 <221> CDS  
 <222> (1)..(45)

<400> 11  
 cag tac atc aaa gct aac tcc aaa ttc atc ggt atc acc gag ctg 45  
 Gln Tyr Ile Lys Ala Asn Ser Lys Phe Ile Gly Ile Thr Glu Leu  
 1 5 10 15

<210> 12  
 <211> 15  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Clostridium tetani

<400> 12  
 Gln Tyr Ile Lys Ala Asn Ser Lys Phe Ile Gly Ile Thr Glu Leu  
 1 5 10 15

<210> 13  
 <211> 63  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Clostridium tetani

<220>  
 <221> CDS  
 <222> (1)..(63)

<400> 13  
 ttc aac aac ttc acc gta agc ttc tgg ctg cgt gtt ccg aaa gtt agc 48  
 Phe Asn Asn Phe Thr Val Ser Phe Trp Leu Arg Val Pro Lys Val Ser  
 1 5 10 15

gct agc cac ctg gaa 63  
 Ala Ser His Leu Glu  
 20

35

<210> 14  
 <211> 21  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Clostridium tetani

<400> 14  
 Phe Asn Asn Phe Thr Val Ser Phe Trp Leu Arg Val Pro Lys Val Ser  
 1 5 10 15  
 Ala Ser His Leu Glu  
 20

<210> 15  
 <211> 25  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
 tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

<400> 15  
 Gln Glu Arg Gly Val Gln Tyr Ile Lys Ala Asn Ser Lys Phe Ile Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Ile Thr Glu Leu Arg Val Asp Cys Thr  
 20 25

<210> 16  
 <211> 25  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
 <223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
 tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

<400> 16  
 Ala Val Val Leu Arg Gln Tyr Ile Lys Ala Asn Ser Lys Phe Ile Gly  
 1 5 10 15  
 Ile Thr Glu Leu Glu Met Lys Thr Tyr  
 20 25

<210> 17  
 <211> 25  
 <212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

<400> 17

Met Phe Leu Glu Arg Gln Tyr Ile Lys Ala Asn Ser Lys Phe Ile Gly  
1 5 10 15

Ile Thr Glu Leu His Val Ile Tyr Ala  
20 25

<210> 18

<211> 31

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

<400> 18

Asn Ser Arg Leu Leu Phe Asn Asn Phe Thr Val Ser Phe Trp Leu Arg  
1 5 10 15

Val Pro Lys Val Ser Ala Ser His Leu Glu Val Asp Cys Thr Pro  
20 25 30

<210> 19

<211> 31

<212> PRT

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

<400> 19

Val Val Leu Arg Lys Phe Asn Asn Phe Thr Val Ser Phe Trp Leu Arg  
1 5 10 15

Val Pro Lys Val Ser Ala Ser His Leu Glu Ser Phe Asp Ser Leu  
20 25 30

<210> 20

<211> 31

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Fusion of  
tetanus toxoid epitope and PSM

&lt;400&gt; 20

Leu	Met	Phe	Leu	Glu	Phe	Asn	Asn	Phe	Thr	Val	Ser	Phe	Trp	Leu	Arg
1				5					10					15	

Val	Pro	Lys	Val	Ser	Ala	Ser	His	Leu	Glu	Pro	Ser	Ser	His	Asn
			20					25					30	

&lt;210&gt; 21

&lt;211&gt; 18

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Artificial His  
tag

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; CDS

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(18)

&lt;400&gt; 21

cat	cat	cat	cat	cat	cat
His	His	His	His	His	His
1				5	

18

&lt;210&gt; 22

&lt;211&gt; 6

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Artificial His  
tag

&lt;400&gt; 22

His	His	His	His	His	His
1				5	

&lt;210&gt; 23

&lt;211&gt; 42

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Artificial His  
tag

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; CDS

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(42)

&lt;400&gt; 23

atg	aaa	cac	caa	cac	caa	cat	caa	cat	caa	cat	caa	cat	caa		42
Met	Lys	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln		
1				5					10						

&lt;210&gt; 24

&lt;211&gt; 14

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence: Artificial His  
tag

&lt;400&gt; 24

Met	Lys	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	His	Gln	
1				5					10					

&lt;210&gt; 25

&lt;211&gt; 69

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Mus musculus

&lt;220&gt;

&lt;221&gt; CDS

&lt;222&gt; (1)..(69)

&lt;400&gt; 25

atg	gat	gca	atg	aag	aga	ggg	ctc	tgc	tgt	gtg	ctg	ctg	ctg	tgt	gga	48
Met	Asp	Ala	Met	Lys	Arg	Gly	Leu	Cys	Cys	Val	Leu	Leu	Leu	Cys	Gly	
1				5					10					15		

gga	ctc	ttc	gtt	tgc	ccc	agc										69
Ala	Val	Phe	Val	Ser	Pro	Ser										
				20												

&lt;210&gt; 26

&lt;211&gt; 23

&lt;212&gt; PRT

&lt;213&gt; Mus musculus

&lt;400&gt; 26

39

Met Asp Ala Met Lys Arg Gly Leu Cys Cys Val Leu Leu Leu Cys Gly  
1 5 10 15

Ala Val Phe Val Ser Pro Ser  
20

<210> 17  
<211> 33  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens

<220>  
<221> CDS  
<222> (1)..(33)

<400> 27  
gaa caa aaa ctc atc tca gaa gag gat ctg aat 33  
Glu Gln Lys Leu Ile Ser Glu Glu Asp Leu Asn  
1 5 10

<210> 28  
<211> 11  
<212> PPT  
<213> Homo sapiens

<400> 28  
Glu Gln Lys Leu Ile Ser Glu Glu Asp Leu Asn  
1 5 10

<210> 29  
<211> 75  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens

<220>  
<221> CDS  
<222> (1)..(75)

<400> 29  
atg aag gat tcc tgc atc act gtg atg gcc atg gag ctg ctg tct ggg 48  
Met Lys Asp Ser Cys Ile Thr Val Met Ala Met Ala Leu Leu Ser Gly  
1 5 10 15

ttc ttt ttc ttc gag cag gcc tcg agc 75  
Phe Phe Phe Phe Ala Pro Ala Ser Ser  
20 25

40

<210> 30  
 <211> 25  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens

<400> 30  
 Met Lys Asp Ser Cys Ile Thr Val Met Ala Met Ala Leu Leu Ser Gly  
           1                  5                  10                  15  
 Phe Phe Phe Phe Ala Pro Ala Ser Ser  
                   20                  25

<210> 31  
 <211> 60  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Mus musculus

<220>  
 <221> CDS  
 <222> (1)..(60)

<400> 31  
 atg aga agg atg ctt ctg cac ttg agt gtt ctg act ctc agc tgt gtc 48  
 Met Arg Arg Met Leu Leu His Leu Ser Val Leu Thr Leu Ser Cys Val  
           1                  5                  10                  15  
 tgg gcc act gcc 60  
 Trp Ala Thr Ala  
                   20

<210> 32  
 <211> 20  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Mus musculus

<400> 32  
 Met Arg Arg Met Leu Leu His Leu Ser Val Leu Thr Leu Ser Cys Val  
           1                  5                  10                  15  
 Trp Ala Thr Ala  
                   20

<210> 33  
 <211> 20  
 <212> PRT  
 <213> Homo sapiens

<400> 33

41

Pro Ala Pro Gly Ser Thr Ala Pro Pro Ala His Gly Val Thr Ser Ala  
1 5 10 15

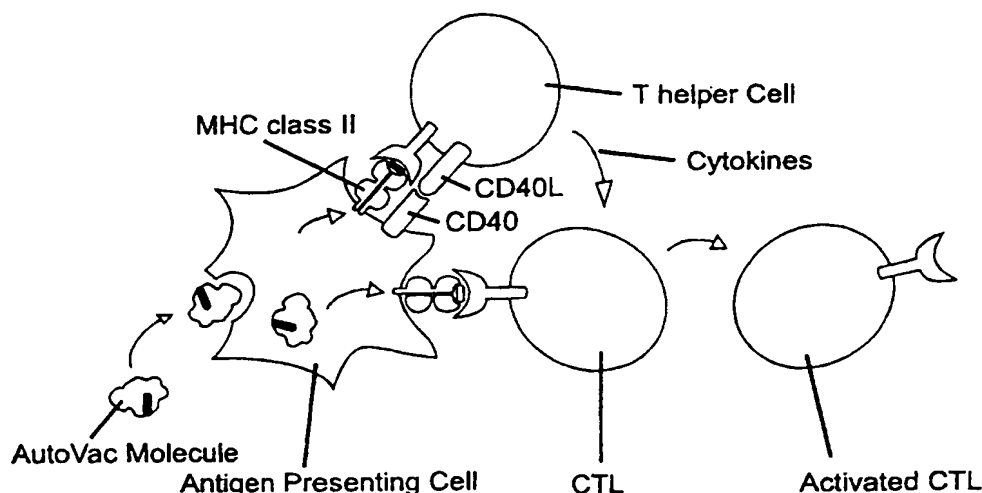
Pro Asp Thr Arg  
20



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification 7 : A61K 38/17, 38/18, C07K 14/50, 14/705, 14/71, C12N 15/63, 5/16, 15/12		A3	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 00/20027</b>
		(43) International Publication Date:	13 April 2000 (13.04.00)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/DK99/00525		KARLSSON, Gunilla [SE/DK]; Collingsgade 6A, 3. tv., DK-2100 København ø (DK).	
(22) International Filing Date: 5 October 1999 (05.10.99)		(74) Agent: PLOUGMANN, VINGTOFT & PARTNERS A/S; Sankt Annae Plads 11, P.O. Box 3007, DK-1021 Copen- hagen K (DK).	
(30) Priority Data: PA 1998 01261 5 October 1998 (05.10.98) DK 60/105,011 20 October 1998 (20.10.98) US		(81) Designated States: AE, AL, AM, AT, AT (Utility model), AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, CZ (Utility model), DE, DE (Utility model), DK, DK (Utility model), DM, EE, EE (Utility model), ES, FI, FI (Utility model), GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SK (Utility model), SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).	
(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): M & E BIOTECH A/S [DK/DK]; Kogle Allé 6, DK-2970 Hør- sholm (DK).		Published With international search report.	
(72) Inventors; and (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): STEINAA, Lucilla [DK/DK]; Viktoriagade 28, 3. th., DK-1655 København V (DK). MOURITSEN, Søren [DK/DK]; Lindevangsvej 24, DK-3460 Birkerød (DK). NIELSEN, Klaus, Gregorius [DK/DK]; Lykkesborg Allé 15, DK-2860 Søborg (DK). HAANING, Jesper [DK/DK]; Biskop Svanes Vej 2E, DK-3460 Birkerød (DK). LEACH, Dana [US/DK]; Ved Store Dyrehave 44, DK-3400 Hillerød (DK). DALUM, Iben [DK/DK]; Olgasvej 13, DK-2970 Hørsholm (DK). GAUTAM, Anand [GB/DK]; Ved Store Dyrehave 22, sl.v., DK-3400 Hillerød (DK). BIRK, Peter [DK/DK]; Rudolph Berghsgade 5, DK-2100 København ø (DK).		(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 12 October 2000 (12.10.00)	

(54) Title: METHODS FOR THERAPEUTIC VACCINATION



## (57) Abstract

A method is disclosed for inducing cell-mediated immunity against cellular antigens. More specifically, the invention provides for a method for inducing cytotoxic T-lymphocyte immunity against weak antigens, notably self-proteins. The method entails that antigen presenting cells are induced to present at least one CTL epitope of the weak antigen and at the same time presenting at least one foreign T-helper lymphocyte epitope. In a preferred embodiment, the antigen is a cancer specific antigen, e.g. PSM, Her2, or FGF8b. The method can be exercised by using traditional polypeptide vaccination, but also by using live attenuated vaccines or nucleic acid vaccination. The invention furthermore provides immunogenic analogues of PSM, Her2 and FGF8b, as well as nucleic acid molecules encoding these analogues. Also vectors and transformed cells are disclosed. The invention also provides for a method for identification of immunogenic analogues of weak or non-immunogenic antigens.

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GE	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LI	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No  
PCT/DK 99/00525

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 A61K38/17 A61K38/18 C07K14/50 C07K14/705 C07K14/71  
C12N15/63 C12N5/16 C12N15/12

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 A61K C07K C12N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DALUM I ET AL: "Induction of cross-reactive antibodies against a self protein by immunization with a modified self protein containing a foreign T helper epitope." MOLECULAR IMMUNOLOGY, (1997 NOV-DEC) 34 (16-17) 1113-20. , XP000910038 the whole document	1-53
X	WO 95 05849 A (MOURITSEN & ELSNER A S ;MOURITSEN SOEREN (DK); ELSNER HENRIK (DK)) 2 March 1995 (1995-03-02) the whole document	1-53

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

### \* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

- \*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
- \*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
- \*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.
- \*&\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

30 June 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

13.07.00

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl.  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Mennessier, T

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/DK 99/00525

### Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:  
Although claims 1-47 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body, the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the epitopes.
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful International Search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

### Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

#### Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

Intern. Patent Application No

PCT/DK 99/00525

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 9505849 A	02-03-1995	AT 162723 T	15-02-1998
		AU 707083 B	01-07-1999
		AU 7009198 A	30-07-1998
		AU 7608094 A	21-03-1995
		CA 2170236 A	02-03-1995
		DE 69408342 D	05-03-1998
		DE 69408342 T	14-05-1998
		DK 752886 T	04-05-1998
		EP 0752886 A	15-01-1997
		ES 2112559 T	01-04-1998
		GR 3026419 T	30-06-1998
		JP 9505031 T	20-05-1997